DS9208 DIGITAL SCANNER PRODUCT REFERENCE GUIDE

DS9208
PRODUCT REFERENCE GUIDE

72E-139635-09
Revision A
March 2019

No part of this publication may be reproduced or used in any form, or by any electrical or mechanical means, without permission in writing from Zebra. This includes electronic or mechanical means, such as photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval systems. The material in this manual is subject to change without notice.

The software is provided strictly on an “as is” basis. All software, including firmware, furnished to the user is on a licensed basis. Zebra grants to the user a non-transferable and non-exclusive license to use each software or firmware program delivered hereunder (licensed program). Except as noted below, such license may not be assigned, sublicensed, or otherwise transferred by the user without prior written consent of Zebra. No right to copy a licensed program in whole or in part is granted, except as permitted under copyright law. The user shall not modify, merge, or incorporate any form or portion of a licensed program with other program material, create a derivative work from a licensed program, or use a licensed program in a network without written permission from Zebra. The user agrees to maintain Zebra’s copyright notice on the licensed programs delivered hereunder, and to include the same on any authorized copies it makes, in whole or in part. The user agrees not to decompile, disassemble, decode, or reverse engineer any licensed program delivered to the user or any portion thereof.

Zebra reserves the right to make changes to any software or product to improve reliability, function, or design.

Zebra does not assume any product liability arising out of, or in connection with, the application or use of any product, circuit, or application described herein.

No license is granted, either expressly or by implication, estoppel, or otherwise under any Zebra Technologies Corporation, intellectual property rights. An implied license only exists for equipment, circuits, and subsystems contained in Zebra products.

Zebra and the Zebra head graphic are registered trademarks of ZIH Corp. The Symbol logo is a registered trademark of Symbol Technologies, Inc., a Zebra Technologies company.

Zebra Technologies Corporation
Lincolnshire, IL U.S.A.
http://www.zebra.com

Warranty

For the complete Zebra hardware product warranty statement, go to:
http://www.zebra.com/warranty.

Revision History

Changes to the original guide are listed below:

Change	Date	Description
-01 Rev A	3/2011	Initial release
-02 Rev A	2/2012	Added mounting template; added new parameters: Illumination Always On, Motion Sensitivity, Fast HID Keyboard Emulation, IBM Specification Version, Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection; updated Driver's License Set Up chapter: added License Issue State AAMVA bar code, added Output Gender as M or F and Date Format parameters.
-03 Rev A	12/2013	Updated description/functionality for Illumination Always On, added Illumination Control parameter, updated defaults for following parameters: Presentation Mode Field of View, Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol, USB Polling Interval, USB Fast HID, I 2 of 5 Lengths, GS1 Databar Limited, Data Matrix Inverse
-04 Rev A	10/28/14	Zebra rebranding
-05 Rev A	4/2015	- Updated URLs. - Add Desk Mount information and template. - Replaced SSI parameter numbers with attribute values. - Updated sealing specification. - Updated IBM Specification Version description. - Added Quick Keypad Emulation. - Added Code 128, Code 39, and I 2 of 5 Security Levels. - Added UPC Reduced Quiet Zone, Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone, Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone, I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone, 1D Quiet Zone Level. - Added Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>. - Added GS1 Data Matrix and GS1 QR code type parameters. - Added Han Xin parameters and sample bar code. - Changed defaults for Timeout Between Decodes Same Symbol, Timeout Between Decodes Different Symbols, I 2 of 5, and Data Matrix Inverse. - Added appendices for Country Codes, Country Code Pages, and CJK Decode Control.
-06 Rev A	5/2015	- Added to scanner configuration list, - Removed Motion Tolerance parameter. - Changed default for Timeout Between Decodes Same Symbol - Changed range for Timeout Between Decodes Different Symbol - Added SSI over USB CDC device type - Added CDC Beep on BEL and Honor Direct I/O Beep parameters
-07 Rev A	9/2016	- Add Symbol Code and Aim Code characters: GS1 Data Matrix, GS1 QR, and Mailmark
-08 Rev A	10/2016	- Changed Presentation Mode Field of View default to Full - Updated descriptions for USB Beep Directive and Bar Code Configuration Directive parameters - Changed ISSN EAN default to Disable - Updated Code 128 length range for PDF Prioritization parameter - Added Mailmark parameter - Removed QR Inverse parameter - Removed ADF chapter and updated 123Scan chapter - Added GS1 Data Matrix, GS1 QR, and Mailmark to Modifier Characters table

Change	Date	Description
-09 Rev A	3/2019	- Added Note at Section USB Device Type on pg. 6-5. - Updated copyright statement on the last page. - Updated barcode caption **IBM OPOS (IBM Hand-held USB with Full Scan Disable)** to **OPOS (IBM Hand-held with Full Disable)** on pg. 6-5. - Updated **HID Keyboard Emulation** to **USB HID Keyboard** on pg. xvi, 6-3, 6-5, 6-8, 6-9. 6-12, 6-17, A-3 and D-1. - Updated **Fast HID Keyboard Emulation** to **USB Fast HID** on pg. 6-4 and A-4. - Updated **Fast HID Keyboard** to **USB Fast HID** on pg. 6-15 and 6-17. - Updated barcode caption **MOD 10/MOD 11** to **MOD 11/MOD 10** on pg. 10-64.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Warranty ii
Revision History iii

About This Guide
Introduction xv
Configurations xv
Chapter Descriptions xvi
Notational Conventions xvii
Related Documents xvii
Service Information xviii

Chapter 1: Getting Started
Introduction 1-1
Interfaces 1-2
Unpacking 1-2
Setting Up the Digital Scanner 1-3
Installing the Interface Cable 1-3
Connecting Power (if required) 1-3
Configuring the Digital Scanner 1-3
Mounting the Digital Scanner 1-4
Wall Mount Bracket 1-4
Desk Mount Bracket 1-5
Locking Mount Bracket 1-6
Accessories 1-8
Required Accessories 1-8
Optional Accessories 1-8
Electronic Article Surveillance (EAS) (Optional) 1-8
Mounting Templates 1-9

Chapter 2: Data Capture
Introduction 2-1
Beeper Definitions 2-2
Selecting Beeper Volume using Trigger 2-4

LED Definitions 2-4
Scanning 2-5
Presentation Mode Scanning 2-5
Momentary Trigger Mode Scanning 2-6
Decode Ranges 2-8
Integrated Electronic Article Surveillance (EAS) 2-8
Deactivation Antenna for Checkpoint EAS Systems 2-8
EAS Deactivation Range 2-8
DS9208 Host Interface Cables and EAS 2-8
Checkpoint Contact Information 2-8

Chapter 3: Maintenance & Technical Specifications
Introduction 3-1
Maintenance 3-1
Troubleshooting 3-2
Report Software Version Bar Code 3-4
Technical Specifications 3-5
Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions 3-7

Chapter 4: User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options
Introduction 4-1
Scanning Sequence Examples 4-2
Errors While Scanning 4-2
User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults 4-2
User Preferences 4-4
Set Default Parameter 4-4
Parameter Bar Code Scanning 4-5
Beep After Good Decode 4-5
Beeper Tone 4-6
Beeper Volume 4-7
Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout 4-8
Beeper Duration 4-9
Suppress Power-up Beeps 4-9
Low Power Mode 4-10
Time Delay to Low Power Mode 4-11
Trigger Mode 4-13
Trigger Aiming Pattern 4-14
Presentation Aiming Pattern 4-15
Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout 4-16
Motion Detect Range 4-17
Decoding Illumination (Hand-Held Mode Only) 4-18
Post Decode Illumination 4-18
Illumination Always On (Presentation Mode Only) 4-19
Illumination Control Timer (Dim Mode) 4-20
Presentation Mode Field of View 4-22
Picklist Mode 4-23
Continuous Bar Code Read 4-24
Unique Bar Code Reporting 4-24
Decode Session Timeout 4-25
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol 4-25

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols 4-26
Fuzzy 1D Processing 4-26
Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only) 4-27
Mobile Phone/Display Mode 4-28
PDF Prioritization 4-29
PDF Prioritization Timeout 4-29
Multicode Mode 4-30
Multicode Expression 4-31
Multicode Mode Concatenation 4-36
Multicode Concatenation Symbology 4-37
Multicode Troubleshooting 4-38
Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters 4-40
Transmit Code ID Character 4-40
Prefix/Suffix Values 4-41
Scan Data Transmission Format 4-42
FN1 Substitution Values 4-43
Transmit “No Read” Message 4-44

Chapter 5: Imaging Preferences
Introduction 5-1
Scanning Sequence Examples 5-2
Errors While Scanning 5-2
Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults 5-2
Imaging Preferences 5-4
Operational Modes 5-4
Image Capture Illumination 5-5
Snapshot Mode Timeout 5-6
Snapshot Aiming Pattern 5-6
Image Cropping 5-7
Crop to Pixel Addresses 5-8
Image Size (Number of Pixels) 5-9
Image Brightness (Target White) 5-10
JPEG Image Options 5-10
JPEG Target File Size 5-11
JPEG Quality and Size Value 5-11
Image Enhancement 5-12
Image File Format Selector 5-13
Image Rotation 5-14
Bits Per Pixel 5-15
Signature Capture 5-16
Signature Capture File Format Selector 5-17
Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel 5-18
Signature Capture Width 5-19
Signature Capture Height 5-19
Signature Capture JPEG Quality 5-19

Chapter 6: USB Interface
Introduction 6-1
Connecting a USB Interface 6-2
USB Parameter Defaults 6-3

USB Host Parameters 6-5
USB Device Type 6-5
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking 6-7
USB Keystroke Delay 6-7
Simulated Caps Lock 6-8
USB CAPS Lock Override 6-8
USB Ignore Unknown Characters 6-9
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39 6-9
USB Beep Directive 6-10
USB Bar Code Configuration Directive 6-10
Emulate Keypad 6-11
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero 6-11
USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution 6-12
Function Key Mapping 6-12
Convert Case 6-13
USB Static CDC 6-13
CDC Beep on <BEL> 6-14
Direct I/O Beep 6-14
USB Transmission Speed Parameters 6-15
IBM Specification Version 6-18
ASCII Character Set for USB 6-19

Chapter 7: RS-232 Interface
Introduction 7-1
Connecting an RS-232 Interface 7-2
RS-232 Parameter Defaults 7-3
RS-232 Host Parameters 7-4
RS-232 Host Types 7-6
Baud Rate 7-8
Parity 7-9
Stop Bits 7-10
Data Bits 7-10
Check Receive Errors 7-11
Hardware Handshaking 7-11
Software Handshaking 7-13
Host Serial Response Timeout 7-15
RTS Line State 7-16
Beep on <BEL> 7-16
Intercharacter Delay 7-17
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options 7-18
Ignore Unknown Characters 7-18
ASCII Character Set for RS-232 7-19

Chapter 8: IBM 468X / 469X Interface
Introduction 8-1
Connecting to an IBM 468X/469X Host 8-2
IBM Parameter Defaults 8-3
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters 8-4
Port Address 8-4
Convert Unknown to Code 39 8-5

Ignore Beep Directive 8-5
Ignore Configuration Directive 8-6

Chapter 9: Keyboard Wedge Interface
Introduction 9-1
Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface 9-2
Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults 9-3
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters 9-4
Keyboard Wedge Host Types 9-4
Ignore Unknown Characters 9-5
Keystroke Delay 9-5
Intra-Keystroke Delay 9-6
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation 9-6
Quick Keypad Emulation 9-7
Simulated Caps Lock 9-7
Caps Lock Override 9-8
Convert Wedge Data 9-8
Function Key Mapping 9-9
FN1 Substitution 9-9
Send Make and Break 9-10
Keyboard Maps 9-11
ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge 9-12

Chapter 10: Symbologies
Introduction 10-1
Scanning Sequence Examples 10-1
Errors While Scanning 10-2
Symbology Parameter Defaults 10-2
Disable All Code Types 10-8
UPC/EAN 10-9
Enable/Disable UPC-A 10-9
Enable/Disable UPC-E 10-9
Enable/Disable UPC-E1 10-10
Enable/Disable EAN-8/JAN-8 10-10
Enable/Disable EAN-13/JAN-13 10-11
Enable/Disable Bookland EAN 10-11
Bookland ISBN Format 10-12
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals 10-13
User-Programmable Supplementals 10-16
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy 10-16
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format 10-17
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone 10-18
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit 10-18
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit 10-19
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit 10-19
UPC-A Preamble 10-20
UPC-E Preamble 10-21
UPC-E1 Preamble 10-22
Convert UPC-E to UPC-A 10-23
Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A 10-23

EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend 10-24
UCC Coupon Extended Code 10-24
Coupon Report 10-25
ISSN EAN 10-26
Code 128 10-27
Enable/Disable Code 128 10-27
Set Lengths for Code 128 10-28
Enable/Disable GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128) 10-29
Enable/Disable ISBT 128 10-29
ISBT Concatenation 10-30
Check ISBT Table 10-31
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy 10-31
Code 128 Security Level 10-32
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone 10-33
Ignore Code 128 <FNC4> 10-33
Code 39 10-34
Enable/Disable Code 39 10-34
Enable/Disable Trioptic Code 39 10-34
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 10-35
Code 32 Prefix 10-35
Set Lengths for Code 39 10-36
Code 39 Check Digit Verification 10-37
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit 10-37
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion 10-38
Code 39 Security Level 10-39
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone 10-40
Code 39 Buffering 10-41
Code 93 10-43
Enable/Disable Code 93 10-43
Set Lengths for Code 93 10-44
Code 11 10-45
Code 11 10-45
Set Lengths for Code 11 10-46
Code 11 Check Digit Verification 10-47
Transmit Code 11 Check Digits 10-48
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF) 10-49
Enable/Disable Interleaved 2 of 5 10-49
Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 10-49
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification 10-51
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit 10-51
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 10-52
I 2 of 5 Security Level 10-53
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone 10-54
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF) 10-55
Enable/Disable Discrete 2 of 5 10-55
Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 10-55
Codabar (NW - 7) 10-57
Enable/Disable Codabar 10-57
Set Lengths for Codabar 10-58
CLSI Editing 10-59
NOTIS Editing 10-59

Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection 10-60
MSI 10-61
Enable/Disable MSI 10-61
Set Lengths for MSI 10-61
MSI Check Digits 10-63
Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) 10-63
MSI Check Digit Algorithm 10-64
Chinese 2 of 5 10-64
Enable/Disable Chinese 2 of 5 10-64
Matrix 2 of 5 10-65
Enable/Disable Matrix 2 of 5 10-65
Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 10-66
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit 10-67
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit 10-67
Korean 3 of 5 10-68
Enable/Disable Korean 3 of 5 10-68
Inverse 1D 10-69
Postal Codes 10-70
US Postnet 10-70
US Planet 10-70
Transmit US Postal Check Digit 10-71
UK Postal 10-71
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit 10-72
Japan Postal 10-72
Australia Post 10-73
Australia Post Format 10-74
Netherlands KIX Code 10-75
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail 10-75
UPU FICS Postal 10-76
Mailmark 10-76
GS1 DataBar 10-77
GS1 DataBar 10-77
GS1 DataBar Limited 10-78
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 10-79
GS1 DataBar Expanded 10-80
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN 10-80
Composite 10-81
Composite CC-C 10-81
Composite CC-A/B 10-81
Composite TLC-39 10-82
UPC Composite Mode 10-82
Composite Beep Mode 10-83
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes 10-83
2D Symbologies 10-84
Enable/Disable PDF417 10-84
Enable/Disable MicroPDF417 10-84
Code 128 Emulation 10-85
Data Matrix 10-86
Data Matrix Inverse 10-86
GS1 Data Matrix 10-87
Maxicode 10-87

QR Code 10-88
GS1 QR 10-88
MicroQR 10-89
Aztec 10-90
Aztec Inverse 10-90
Han Xin 10-91
Han Xin Inverse 10-91
Redundancy Level 10-92
Redundancy Level 1 10-92
Redundancy Level 2 10-92
Redundancy Level 3 10-92
Redundancy Level 4 10-93
Security Level 10-94
1D Quiet Zone Level 10-95
Intercharacter Gap Size 10-96
Report Version 10-96
Macro PDF Features 10-97
Flush Macro Buffer 10-97
Abort Macro PDF Entry 10-97

Chapter 11: 123Scan and Software Tools
Introduction 11-1
123Scan 11-1
Communication with 123Scan 11-2
123Scan Requirements 11-2
123Scan Information 11-3
Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos 11-3
Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) 11-4

Chapter 12: Driver's License Set Up (DS9208-DL)
Introduction 12-1
Driver's License Parsing 12-2
Parsing Driver's License Data Fields (Embedded Driver's License Parsing) 12-3
Embedded Driver's License Parsing Criteria - Code Type 12-3
Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes 12-4
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes 12-7
User Preferences 12-17
Set Default Parameter 12-17
Output Gender as M or F 12-17
Date Format 12-18
Send Keystroke (Control Characters and Keyboard Characters) 12-20
Parsing Rule Example 12-39
Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example 12-43

Appendix A: Standard Default Parameters

Appendix B: Country Codes
Introduction B-1
USB and Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes) B-2

Appendix C: Country Code Pages
Introduction C-1
Country Code Page Defaults C-1
Country Code Page Bar Codes C-5

Appendix D: CJK Decode Control
Introduction D-1
CJK Control Parameters D-2
Unicode Output Control D-2
CJK Output Method to Windows Host D-3
Non-CJK UTF Bar Code Output D-5
Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host D-7
Setting Up the Windows Registry Table for Unicode Universal Output D-7
Adding CJK IME on Windows D-7
Selecting the Simplified Chinese Input Method on the Host D-8
Selecting the Traditional Chinese Input Method on the Host D-9

Appendix E: Programming Reference
Symbol Code Identifiers E-1
AIM Code Identifiers E-3

Appendix F: Sample Bar Codes
Code 39 ..... F-1
UPC/EAN F-1
UPC-A, 100% F-1
EAN-13, 100% F-2
Code 128 ..... F-2
Interleaved 2 of 5 ..... F-2
GS1 DataBar-14 ..... F-3
PDF417 ..... F-3
Data Matrix F-3
Maxicode F-3
QR Code F-4
Han Xin F-4
US Postnet F-4
UK Postal F-4

Appendix G: Numeric Bar Codes
Numeric Bar Codes G-1
Cancel G-2

Appendix H: ASCII Character Sets

Appendix I: Signature Capture Code
Introduction I-1
Code Structure I-1
Signature Capture Area I-1

CapCode Pattern Structure I-2
Start / Stop Patterns I-2
Dimensions I-3
Data Format I-3
Additional Capabilities I-4
Signature Boxes I-4

Index

ABOUT THIS GUIDE

Introduction

The *DS9208 Product Reference Guide* provides general instructions for setting up, operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting the DS9208 digital scanner.

Configurations

This guide includes the following DS9208 digital scanner configurations:

- DS9208-SR00004NNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, Standard Range, Black
- DS9208-SR0000WNNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, Standard Range, White
- DS9208-SR00004CNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, Standard Range, Black, Checkpoint EAS
- DS9208-SR0000WCNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, Standard Range, White, Checkpoint EAS
- DS9208-DL00004NNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, DL parsing, Standard Range, Black
- DS9208-DL0000WNNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, DL parsing, Standard Range, White
- DS9208-DL00004CNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, DL parsing, Standard Range, Black, Checkpoint EAS
- DS9208-DL0000WCNWW - DS9208 Digital Scanner, DL parsing, Standard Range, White, Checkpoint EAS

Chapter Descriptions

Topics covered in this guide are as follows:

- *Chapter 1, Getting Started* provides a product overview, unpacking instructions, cable connection, and mounting information.
- *Chapter 2, Data Capture* describes parts of the digital scanner, beeper and LED definitions, and how to use the scanner in hand-held and hands-free (presentation) modes.
- *Chapter 3, Maintenance & Technical Specifications* provides information on how to care for the digital scanner, troubleshooting, and technical specifications.
- *Chapter 4, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options* describes features frequently used to customize how data transmits to the host device and programming bar codes for selecting user preference features for the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 5, Imaging Preferences* provides imaging preference features and programming bar codes for selecting these features.
- *Chapter 6, USB Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host.
- *Chapter 7, RS-232 Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host, such as point-of-sale devices, host computers, or other devices with an available RS-232 port.
- *Chapter 8, IBM 468X / 469X Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with IBM 468X/469X POS systems.
- *Chapter 9, Keyboard Wedge Interface* describes how to set up a Keyboard Wedge interface with the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 10, Symbologies* describes all symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features for the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 11, 123Scan and Software Tools* describes the Zebra software tools available for customizing scanner operation.
- *Chapter 12, Driver's License Set Up (DS9208-DL)* describes how the DS9208-DL digital scanner can parse out information from standard US driver's licenses and certain other American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators (AAMVA) compliant ID cards.
- *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* provides a table of all host device and miscellaneous scanner defaults.
- *Appendix B, Country Codes* provides bar codes for programming the country keyboard type for the USB keyboard (HID) device and the keyboard wedge host.
- *Appendix C, Country Code Pages* provides bar codes for selecting code pages for the country keyboard type.
- *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control* describes control parameters for Unicode/CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) bar code decode through USB HID Keyboard mode.
- *Appendix E, Programming Reference* provides a table of AIM code identifiers, ASCII character conversions, and keyboard maps.
- *Appendix F, Sample Bar Codes* includes sample bar codes of various code types.
- *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* includes the numeric bar codes to scan for parameters requiring specific numeric values.
- *Appendix H, ASCII Character Sets* provides ASCII character value tables.

- *Appendix I, Signature Capture Code* provides information on CapCode, a signature capture code that encloses a signature area on a document and allows a scanner to capture a signature.

Notational Conventions

The following conventions are used in this document:

- *Italics* are used to highlight the following:
  - Chapters and sections in this and related documents
  - Dialog box, window and screen names
  - Drop-down list and list box names
  - Check box and radio button names
- **Bold** text is used to highlight the following:
  - Key names on a keypad
  - Button names on a screen.
- bullets (•) indicate:
  - Action items
  - Lists of alternatives
  - Lists of required steps that are not necessarily sequential
- Sequential lists (e.g., those that describe step-by-step procedures) appear as numbered lists.
- Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) are used to denote default parameter settings.

Related Documents

- *DS9208 Quick Start Guide*, p/n 72-140088-xx - provides general information for getting started with the DS9208 digital scanner, and includes basic set up and operation instructions.
- *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*, p/n 72E-69680-xx - provides information on ADF, a means of customizing data before transmission to a host.
- *Plural Stage Programmer's Guide*, p/n 72E-67113-xx - allows programming the digital scanner to decode Plural Stage bar codes and enable Supplemental Recognition Characters.

For the latest version of this guide and all Zebra guides, go to: http://www.zebra.com/support.

Service Information

If you have a problem using the equipment, contact your facility's technical or systems support. If there is a problem with the equipment, they will contact the Zebra Global Customer Support Center at: http://www.zebra.com/support.

When contacting Zebra support, please have the following information available:

- Serial number of the unit
- Model number or product name
- Software type and version number

Zebra responds to calls by e-mail, telephone or fax within the time limits set forth in service agreements.

If your problem cannot be solved by Zebra support, you may need to return your equipment for servicing and will be given specific directions. Zebra is not responsible for any damages incurred during shipment if the approved shipping container is not used. Shipping the units improperly can possibly void the warranty.

If you purchased your business product from a Zebra business partner, please contact that business partner for support.

CHAPTER 1 GETTING STARTED

Introduction

The DS9208 combines superior 1D and 2D omnidirectional bar code scanning and advanced feature set in a compact design. The digital scanner's built-in stand seamlessly accommodates both counter-top and hand-held use. Whether in presentation or trigger mode, the digital scanner ensures comfort and ease of use for extended periods of time.

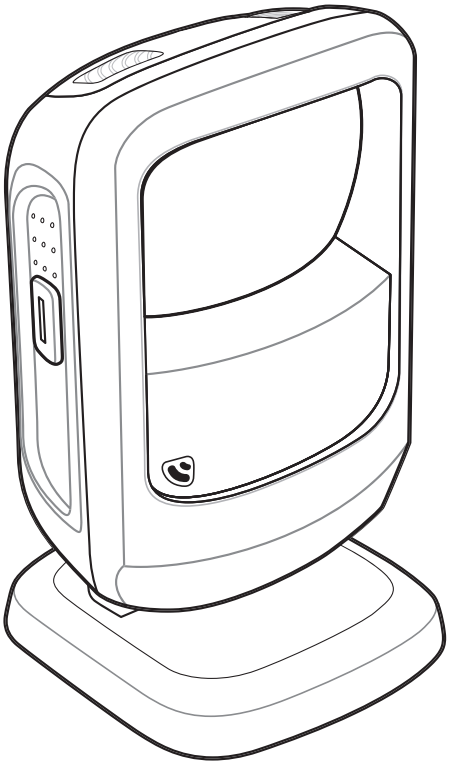


Figure 1-1 *DS9208 Digital Scanner*

Interfaces

The DS9208 digital scanner supports:

- USB connection to a host. The digital scanner autodetects a USB host and defaults to the HID keyboard interface type. Select other USB interface types by scanning programming bar code menus. See *Appendix B, Country Codes* for supported international keyboards.
- Standard RS-232 connection to a host. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the host.
- RS-485 connection to IBM 468X/469X hosts. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the IBM terminal.
- Keyboard Wedge connection to a host. The host interprets scanned data as keystrokes. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the host. See *Appendix B, Country Codes* for supported international keyboards.

NOTE Only the Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging interface supports image capture. See *USB Device Type on page 6-5* to enable this host.

Unpacking

Remove the digital scanner from its packing and inspect it for damage. If the scanner was damaged in transit, contact Zebra Support. See *page xviii* for contact information. **KEEP THE PACKING**. It is the approved shipping container; use this to return the equipment for servicing.

Setting Up the Digital Scanner

Installing the Interface Cable

1. Insert the interface cable modular connector into the interface cable port on the rear of the digital scanner until you hear a click. The green LED lights and low/medium/high beeps sound, indicating that the scanner is operational.

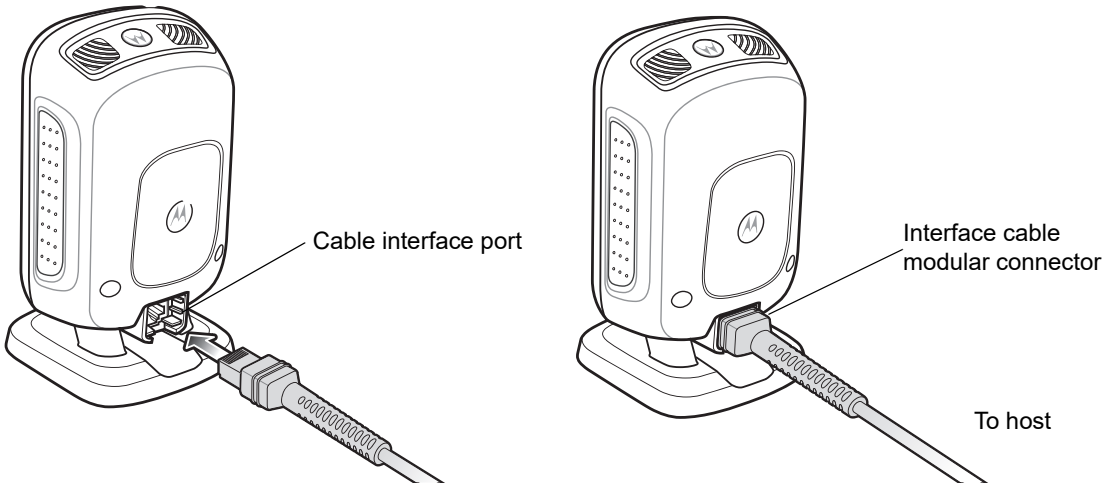


Figure 1-2 *Installing the Cable*

> ***NOTE*** Different hosts require different cables. The connectors illustrated in each host chapter are examples only. Connectors vary from those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

2. Gently tug the cable to ensure the connector is secure.
3. Connect the other end of the interface cable to the host (see the specific host chapter for information on host connections).

Removing the Interface Cable

1. Tilt the scanner fully forward.
2. Using the tip of a small screwdriver, depress the cable's modular connector clip and carefully slide out the cable.

Connecting Power (if required)

If the host does not provide power to the digital scanner, connect an external power supply.

1. Plug the power supply into the power jack on the interface cable.
2. Plug the other end of the power supply into an AC outlet.

Configuring the Digital Scanner

To configure the digital scanner use the bar codes included in this manual, or use the 123Scan^2 configuration program. See *Chapter 4, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options*, *Chapter 5, Imaging Preferences*, and *Chapter 10, Symbologies* for information about programming the digital scanner using bar code menus. See *Chapter 11, 123Scan and Software Tools* for information on using this configuration program. Also see each host-specific chapter to set up connection to a specific host type.

Mounting the Digital Scanner

Wall Mount Bracket

An optional wall mount bracket is available for mounting the scanner to a wall or other vertical surface. For a template that facilitates screw placement, see *Mounting Templates on page 1-9*.

To mount the DS9208:

1. Place the bracket in its desired location on the wall, and insert two #8 screws through each screw hole in the bracket.

   NOTE Select a screw type and length appropriate for the wall material.

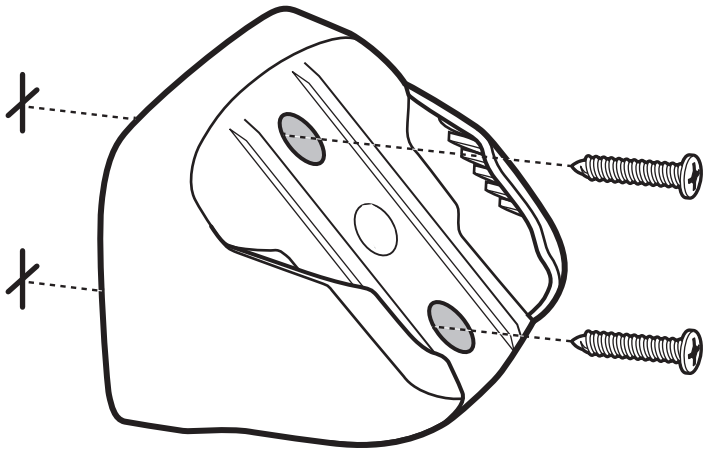


Figure 1-3 *Installing the Wall Mount Bracket*

2. Tighten the screws to secure the bracket to the wall.

3. Slide the base of the digital scanner into the bracket, oriented so the scan window faces down.

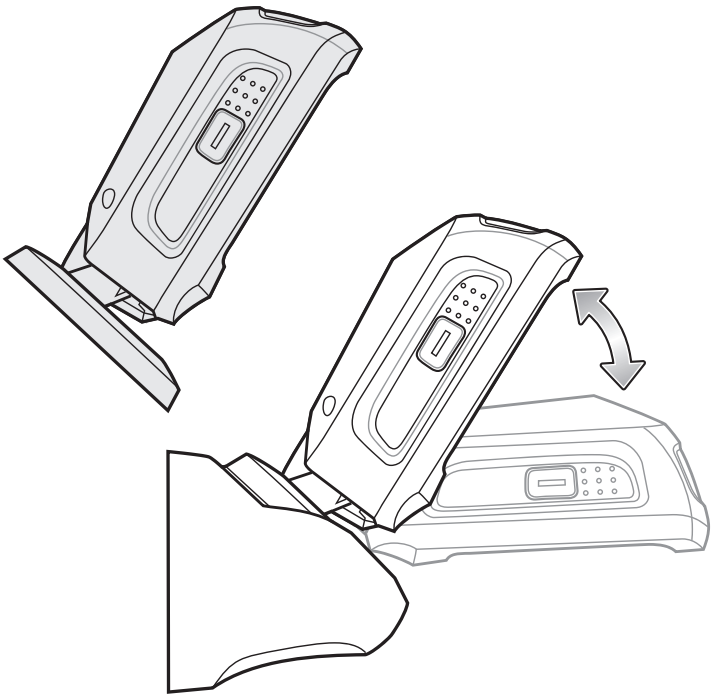


Figure 1-4 *Inserting the DS9208 into the Wall Mount Bracket*

Desk Mount Bracket

An optional desk mount bracket is available for mounting the scanner to a desk or other horizontal surface. For a template that facilitates screw placement, see *Mounting Templates on page 1-9*.

To mount the DS9208:

1. Place the bracket in its desired location, and insert two #8 screws through each screw hole in the bracket.

   NOTE Select a screw type and length appropriate for the surface material.

2. Tighten the screws to secure the bracket to the surface.
3. Slide the base of the digital scanner forward into the bracket.

Locking Mount Bracket

An optional locking mount bracket is available for "locking" the scanner into position on a horizontal (or vertical) surface. This option is recommended for applications where it is desirable to affix the scanner to a counter or desktop. For a template that facilitates screw placement, see *Mounting Templates on page 1-9*.

To mount the DS9208:

1. Place the bracket in its desired location on the counter or desktop. Make sure that the indicator on the bracket is consistent with the direction that the scanner will face. Insert four #8 screws through each screw hole in the bracket.

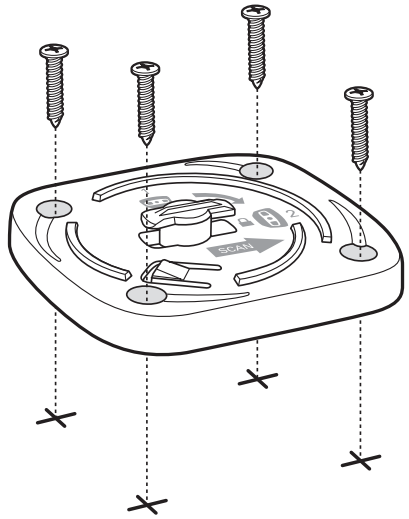


Figure 1-5 *Figure 1-4 Installing the Locking Mount Bracket*

2. Tighten the screws to secure the bracket to the counter or desktop.

3. To insert the scanner into the Locking Mount Bracket, place the scanner onto the bracket and turn it 1/4 revolution clockwise until you hear a click and the scanner faces its final position.

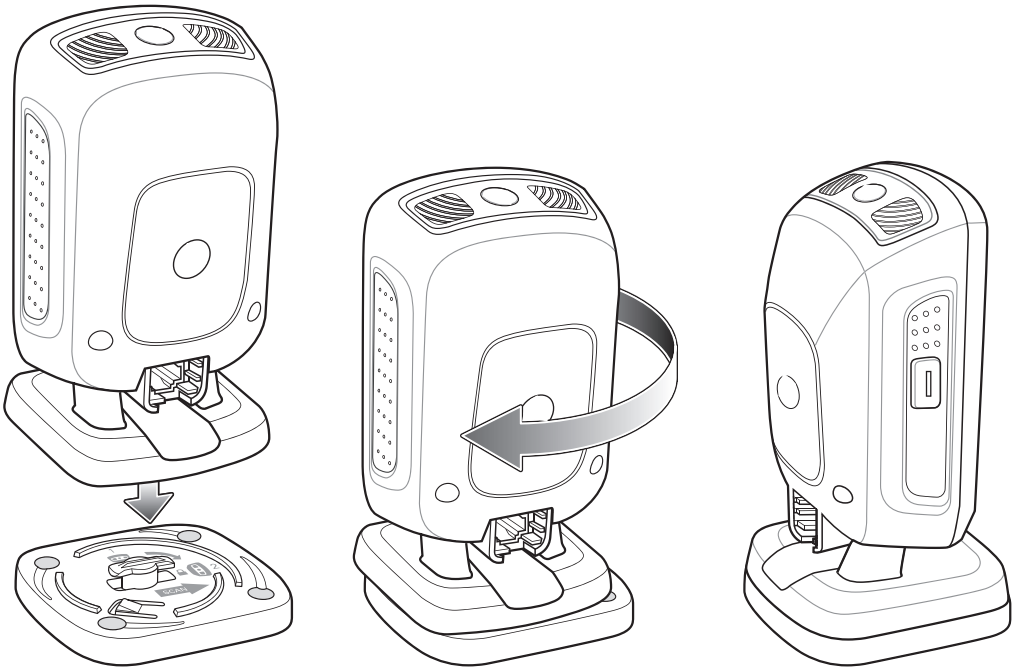


Figure 1-6 *Inserting the DS9208 into the Locking Mount Bracket*

4. To remove the scanner from the Locking Mount Bracket, lift the scanner, pull up slightly on the scanner with particular emphasis on the right rear corner (where the locking mechanism is) and turn counter-clockwise until the scanner is released.

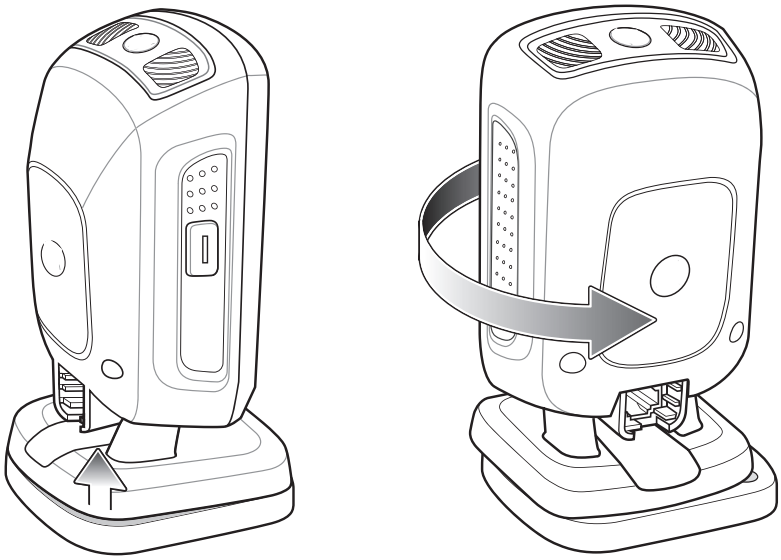


Figure 1-7 *Removing the DS9208 from the Locking Mount Bracket*

Accessories

Required Accessories

The digital scanner ships with the *DS9208 Quick Start Guide*. Also order an interface cable for the appropriate interface, and a universal power supply if the interface requires this. For additional items, contact a local Zebra representative or business partner.

Optional Accessories

Contact Zebra to purchase the following accessories for the DS9208:

- Wall Mount Bracket (see *Wall Mount Bracket on page 1-4* for installation instructions)
- Locking Mount Bracket (see *Locking Mount Bracket on page 1-6* for installation instructions)

Electronic Article Surveillance (EAS) (Optional)

Because there are several Checkpoint EAS systems available, your local Checkpoint representative should connect the digital scanner to the Checkpoint EAS system and tune the system. To contact your local Checkpoint representative inside the U.S. call 800-257-5540, ext. 4300. Outside the U.S., call (609) 848-1800, ext. 4300.

Mounting Templates

Use the following templates to facilitate the proper placement of brackets and screws.

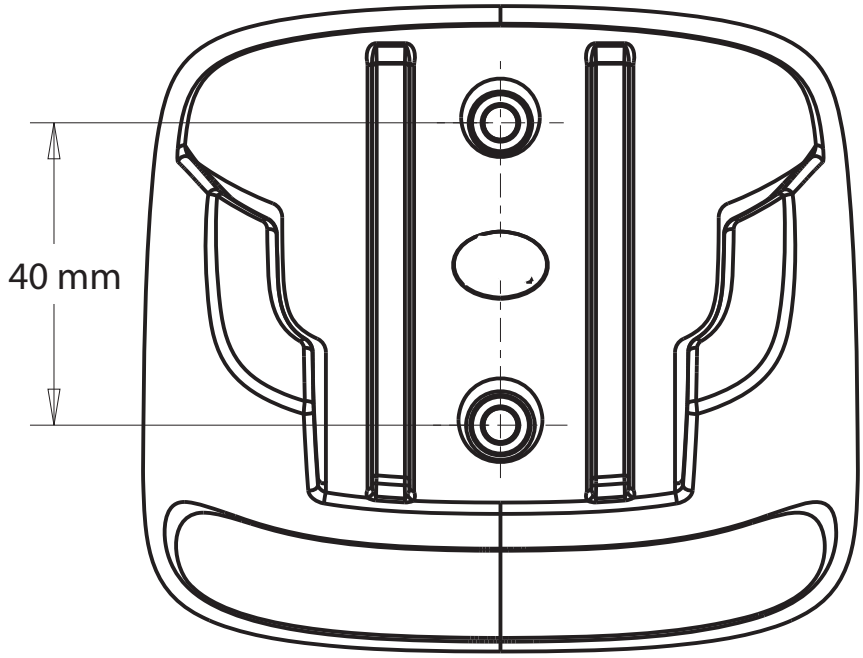


Figure 1-8 *Wall Mount Bracket Template*

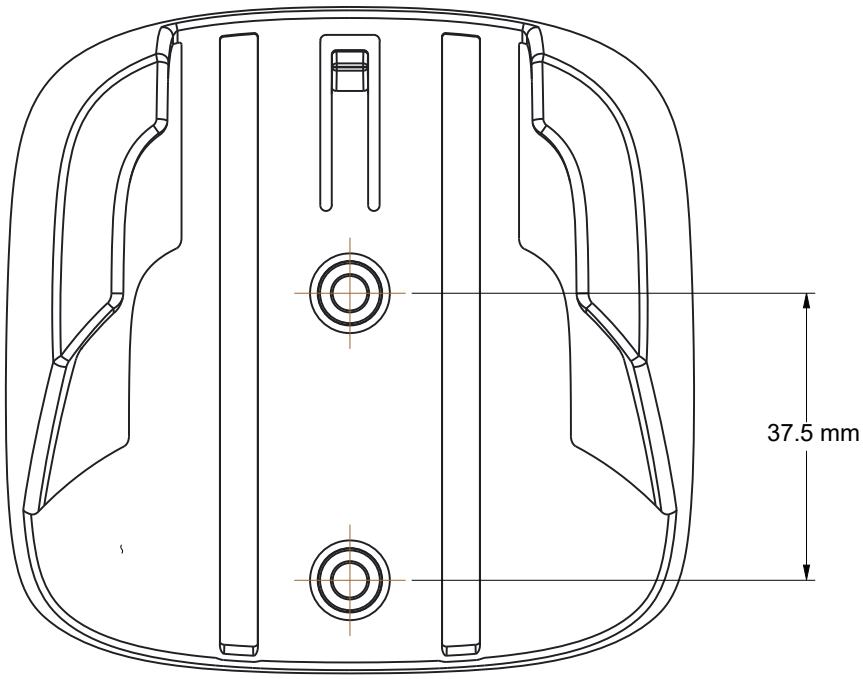


Figure 1-9 *Desk Mount Bracket Template*

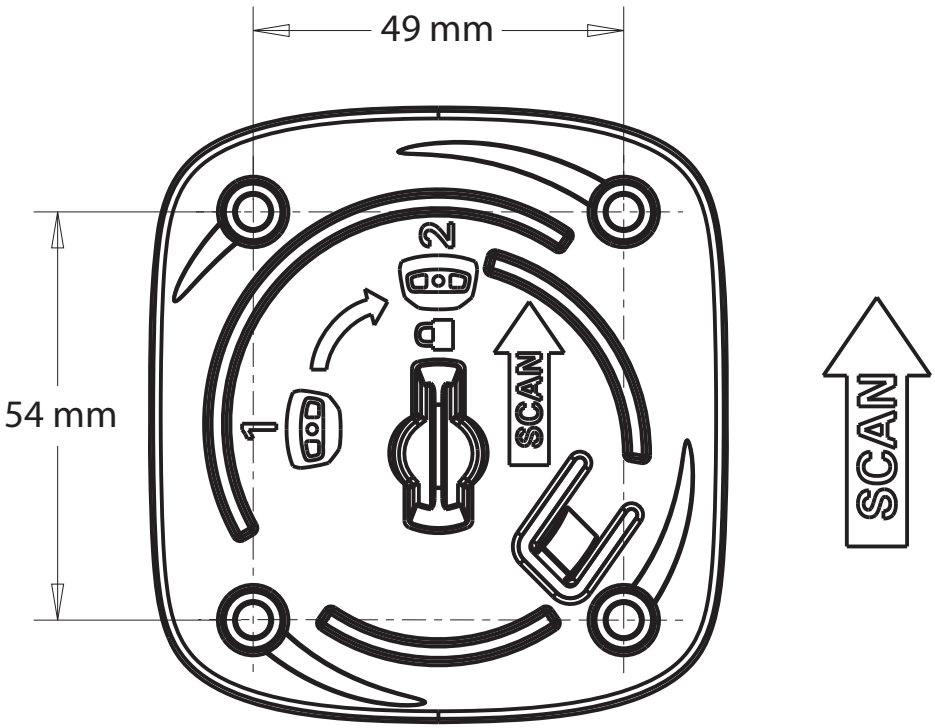


Figure 1-10 *Locking Mount Bracket Template*

CHAPTER 2 DATA CAPTURE

Introduction

This chapter provides beeper and LED definitions, techniques involved in capturing bar codes, general instructions and tips about scanning, and decode range information.

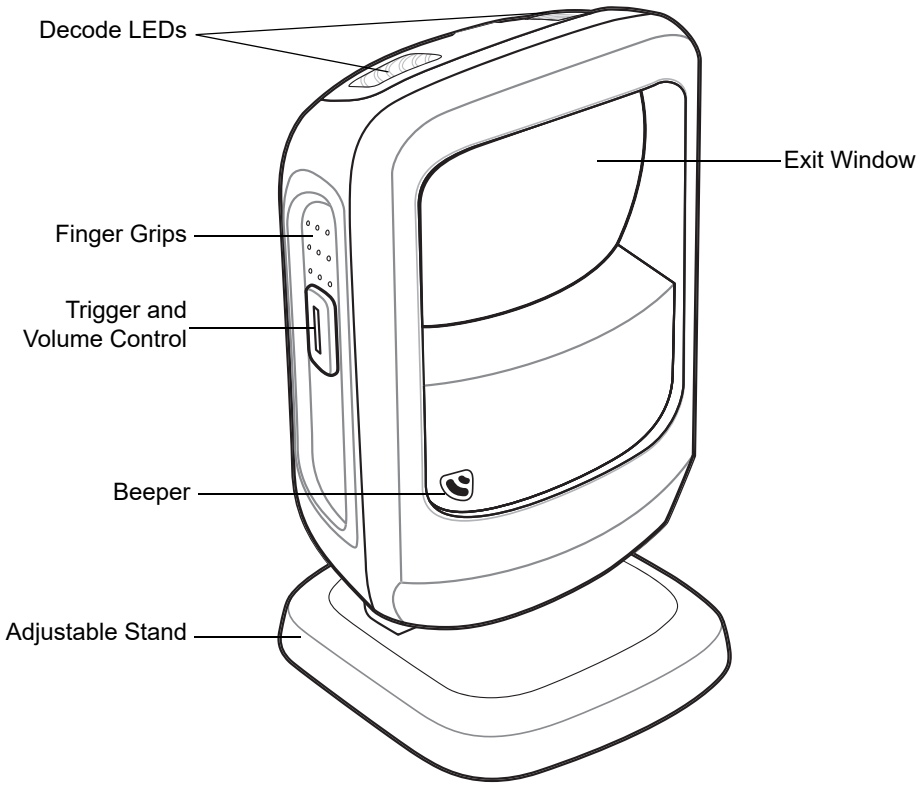


Figure 2-1 *Parts*

Beeper Definitions

The digital scanner issues different beep sequences and patterns to indicate status. *Table 2-1* defines beep sequences that occur during both normal scanning and while programming the digital scanner.

Table 2-1 *Beeper Definitions*

Beeper Sequence	Indication
Standard Use	
Low/medium/high beeps	Power up.
Short beep (tone programmable)	A bar code symbol was decoded (if decode beeper is enabled).
4 low beeps	Transmission error.
5 low beeps	Conversion or format error.
Low/low/low/extra low beeps	RS-232 receive error.
High beep	The digital scanner detected a <BEL> character over RS-232.
Image Capture	
Low beep	Snapshot mode started or completed.
High/low beeps	Snapshot mode timed out.
Parameter Menu Scanning	
High/low beeps	Input error; incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or **Cancel** scanned.
Low/low beeps	Keyboard parameter selected. Enter value using numeric bar codes.
High/low/high/low beeps	Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
ADF Programming	
High/low beeps	Enter another digit. Add leading zeros to the front if necessary.
Low/low beeps	Enter another alphabetic character or scan the End of Message bar code.
High/high beeps	ADF criteria or action is expected. Enter another criterion or action, or scan the Save Rule bar code.
High/low/high/low beeps	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited.
High/low/low beeps	All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule.
Low beep	Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact.
Low/high/high beeps	All rules are deleted.
Low/high/low/high beeps	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again.
Low/high/low beeps	Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Low/high beeps	Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.

Table 2-1 *Beeper Definitions (Continued)*

Beeper Sequence	Indication
Code 39 Buffering	
High/low beeps	New Code 39 data was entered into the buffer.
3 long high beeps	Code 39 buffer is full.
High/low/high beeps	The Code 39 buffer was erased.
Low/high/low beeps	The Code 39 buffer was erased or there was an attempt to clear or transmit an empty buffer.
Low/high beeps	A successful transmission of buffered data.
Macro PDF	
2 low beeps	MPDF sequence buffered.
2 long low beeps	File ID error. A bar code not in the current MPDF sequence was scanned.
3 long low beeps	Out of memory. There is not enough buffer space to store the current MPDF symbol.
4 long low beeps	Bad symbology. Scanned a 1D or 2D bar code in a MPDF sequence, a duplicate MPDF label, a label in an incorrect order, or trying to transmit an empty or illegal MPDF field.
5 long low beeps	Flushing MPDF buffer.
Fast warble beep	Aborting MPDF sequence.
Low/high beeps	Flushing an already empty MPDF buffer.
Host Specific	
USB only	
Low/medium/high beeps upon scanning a USB device type	Communication with the host must be established before the digital scanner can operate at the highest power level.
Low/medium/high beeps occur more than once	The USB host can put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once. This is normal and usually happens when the PC cold boots.
RS-232 only	
1 short high beep	A <BEL> character is received and Beep on <BEL> is enabled.

Selecting Beeper Volume using Trigger

The digital scanner emits a short beep when it successfully reads a bar code. To change the volume of the beep either scan the appropriate bar code in *Beeper Volume on page 4-7*, or use the trigger as follows:

1. Press and hold the trigger for an extended period of time (5 seconds by default - see *Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout on page 4-8* to change this). The digital scanner cycles through three settings (High, Medium, Low) emitting a 2-beep tone at each setting.
2. To select a particular setting, release the trigger after you hear the desired 2-beep tone.

LED Definitions

In addition to beep sequences, the digital scanner uses a two-color LED to indicate status. *Table 2-2* defines LED colors that display during scanning.

Table 2-2 *Standard LED Definitions*

LED	Indication
Presentation Mode	
Green	The scanner is on and ready to scan.
Momentarily Off	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is in low power mode.
Trigger Mode	
Green	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is on and ready to scan.
Image Capture	
Blinking Green	Snapshot mode started.
None	Snapshot mode completed or timed out.
Parameter Programming	
Green	Number expected. Enter value using numeric bar codes. Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
Red	Input error: incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or Cancel scanned.
ADF Programming	
Green	Enter another digit. Add leading zeros to the front if necessary. Enter another alphabetic character or scan the **End of Message** bar code. All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule. Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact. All rules deleted.
Blinking Green	Enter another criterion or action, or scan the **Save Rule** bar code.

Table 2-2 *Standard LED Definitions*

LED	Indication
Green after Blinking	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited. Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Red	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again. Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.
Firmware update	
Red, alternating between solid and fast blinking	Firmware download is completing. Wait for this indicator to complete before using the scanner. This indicator is followed by a low/medium/high power up beep.

Scanning

The DS9208 has an integrated, adjustable stand to easily accommodate both presentation and triggered scanning.

Presentation Mode Scanning

For standard operation, the digital scanner is in presentation mode and automatically decodes bar codes that are presented in its field of view.

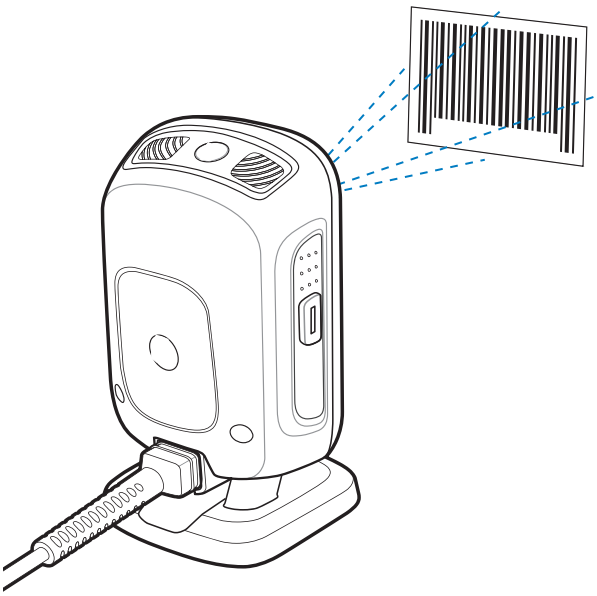


Figure 2-2 *Scanning in Presentation Mode, Hands-Free*

To scan in hand-held presentation mode, pick up the digital scanner. It remains in presentation mode and decodes bar codes that are in its field of view.

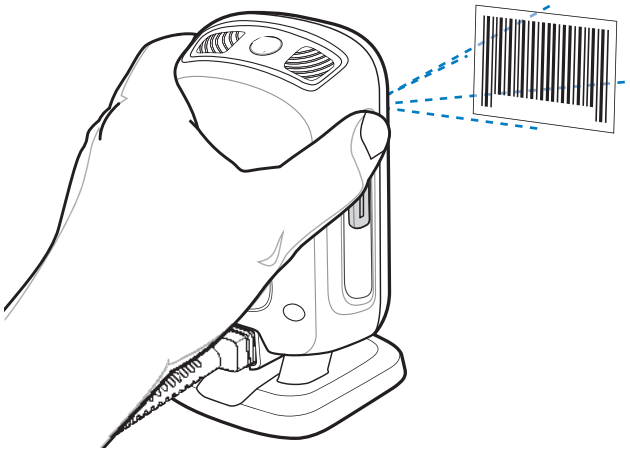


Figure 2-3 *Scanning in Presentation Mode, Hand-Held*

Momentary Trigger Mode Scanning

To operate the digital scanner in trigger mode:

1. Pick up the digital scanner. Press and release the trigger. The aiming dot displays.

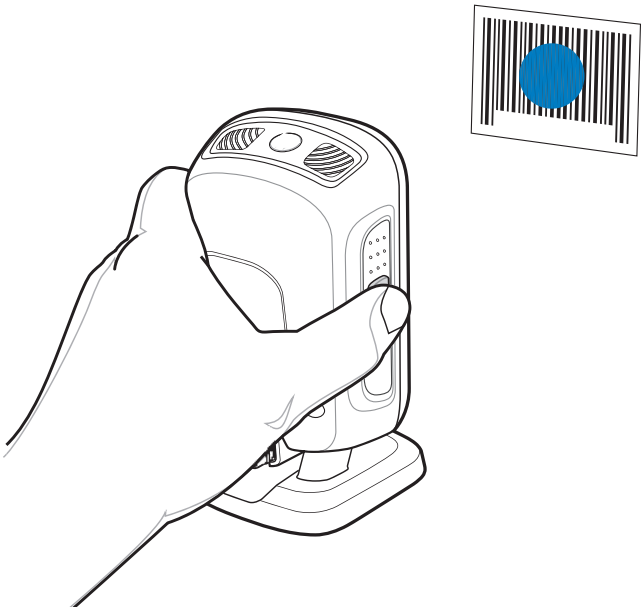


Figure 2-4 *Scanning in Momentary Trigger Mode*

2. Ensure the aiming dot is centered on the bar code. See *Aiming in Momentary Trigger Mode*.
3. Press and hold the trigger until either:
   a. The digital scanner reads the bar code. The digital scanner beeps and the “good decode” LEDs flash.
   b. The digital scanner does not read the bar code and illumination turns off.
4. Release the trigger. The aiming dot reappears. To read another bar code, repeat steps 2 and 3.

After a programmable time period (see *Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout on page 4-16*), the aiming dot turns off and the digital scanner returns to presentation mode, ready to read bar codes without use of the trigger. For beeper definitions, see *Table 2-1*.

Aiming in Momentary Trigger Mode

When scanning, the digital scanner projects a red aiming dot which allows positioning the bar code within its field of view. See *Decode Ranges on page 2-8* for the proper distance to achieve between the digital scanner and a symbol.

Figure 2-5 *Imager Aiming Dot*

If necessary, the digital scanner turns on its red LEDs to illuminate the target symbol.

To scan a symbol, center the aiming dot on the symbol, in any orientation.

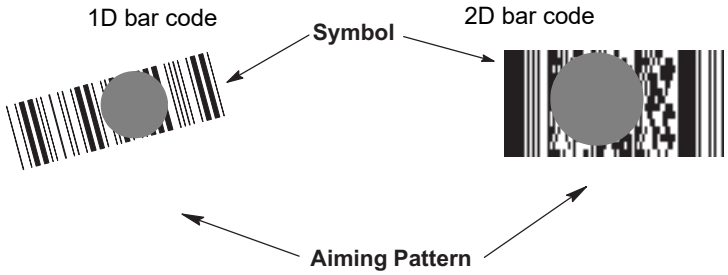


Figure 2-6 *Scanning Orientation with Imager Aiming Dot*

The digital scanner can also decode with the aiming dot on a symbol but not centered. The top examples in *Figure 2-7* show acceptable aiming options, while the bottom examples may not be decoded.

Figure 2-7 *Acceptable and Incorrect Aiming*

The aiming dot is smaller when the digital scanner is closer to the symbol and larger when it is farther from the symbol. Scan symbols with smaller bars or elements (mil size) closer to the digital scanner, and those with larger bars or elements (mil size) farther from the digital scanner.

The digital scanner beeps to indicate that it successfully decoded the symbol. For more information on beeper and LED definitions, see *Table 2-1* and *Table 2-2*.

Decode Ranges

Table 2-3 *Decode Ranges*

Symbol Density	Bar Code Type	Typical Working Ranges	
		Near	Far
5.0 mil	Code 39	0 in / 0 cm	4.5 in / 11.4 cm
10 mil	80% UPCEAN	0 in / 0 cm	8.5 in / 21.6 cm
13 mil	100% UPC	0 in / 0 cm	10.5 in / 26.7 cm
6.6 mil	PDF417	0 in / 0 cm	3.8 in / 9.6 cm
10 mil	Data Matrix	0 in / 0 cm	4.7 in / 11.9 cm

Integrated Electronic Article Surveillance (EAS)

Deactivation Antenna for Checkpoint EAS Systems

The digital scanner's optional EAS deactivation feature includes an integrated RF antenna which, when attached to a Checkpoint EAS deactivation system, supports deactivation of EAS security labels while scanning a product at the Point-of-Sale. This allows removing the merchandise from the store without activating the security alarm.

NOTE Contact your local Checkpoint representative to help connect the EAS deactivation system to insure proper operation.

EAS Deactivation Range

There are several adjustments that can be made on the Checkpoint Deactivation System side. Contact Checkpoint Systems, Inc. for details.

DS9208 Host Interface Cables and EAS

The digital scanner requires a special EAS scanner cable to connect to the Checkpoint EAS deactivation system. These cables are available for a variety of hosts types (e.g., USB, RS-232, RS-485).

Checkpoint Contact Information

Checkpoint Headquarters (New Jersey): 800-257-5540.

Outside the United States: +1-856-848-1800.

CHAPTER 3 MAINTENANCE & TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Introduction

This chapter provides suggested digital scanner maintenance, troubleshooting, technical specifications, and signal descriptions (pinouts).

Maintenance

Cleaning the scan window is the only maintenance required. A dirty window can affect scanning accuracy.

- Do not allow abrasive material to touch the window.
- Remove any dirt particles with a damp cloth.
- Wipe the window using a dust-free soft cloth moistened with isopropyl alcohol-based cleaner. Do not let liquid pool around the window or any other area on the scanner.
- Do not spray water or other cleaning liquids directly into the window.

Troubleshooting

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
The aiming dot does not appear when pressing the trigger.	No power to the digital scanner.	If the configuration requires a power supply, re-connect the power supply.
	Incorrect host interface cable is used.	Connect the correct host interface cable.
	Interface/power cables are loose.	Re-connect cables.
	Digital scanner is disabled.	For IBM 468x and USB IBM hand-held, IBM table top, and OPOS modes, enable the digital scanner via the host interface. Otherwise, see the technical person in charge of scanning.
	If using RS-232 Nixdorf B mode, CTS is not asserted.	Assert CTS line.
	Aiming dot is disabled.	Enable the aiming dot. See *Trigger Aiming Pattern on page 4-14*.
Digital scanner emits short low/short medium/short high beep sequence (power-up beep sequence) more than once.	The USB bus may put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once.	Normal during host reset.
Digital scanner emits aiming dot, but does not decode the bar code.	Digital scanner is not programmed for that bar code type.	Program the digital scanner to read that type of bar code. See *Chapter 10, Symbologies*.
	Bar code symbol is unreadable.	Scan test symbols of the same bar code type to determine if the bar code is defaced.
	The aiming dot is not centered on the symbol.	Center the aiming dot on the symbol. See *Aiming in Momentary Trigger Mode on page 2-7*.
	Picklist mode is preventing the digital scanner from decoding all bar codes in the field of view.	Disable Picklist mode. See *Picklist Mode on page 4-23*.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner decodes bar code, but does not transmit the data to the host.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct host type.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code. See the chapter corresponding to the host type.
	Interface cable is loose.	Re-connect the cable.
	If the digital scanner emits 4 long low beeps, a transmission error occurred.	Set the scanner's communication parameters to match the host's setting.
	If the digital scanner emits 5 low beeps, a conversion or format error occurred.	Configure the digital scanner's conversion parameters properly.
	If the digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps, it detected an invalid ADF rule.	Program the correct ADF rules. Refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*
	If the digital scanner emits high/low beeps, the scanner is buffering Code 39 data.	Normal scanning a Code 39 bar code and the Code 39 Buffering option is enabled.
Host displays scanned data incorrectly.	Digital scanner is not programmed to work with the host.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code.
		For RS-232, set the digital scanner's communication parameters to match the host's settings.
		For a Keyboard Wedge configuration, program the system for the correct keyboard type, and turn off the CAPS LOCK key.
		Program the proper editing options (e.g., UPC-E to UPC-A Conversion).
Digital scanner emits low/low/low/extra low beeps when not in use.	RS-232 receive error.	Normal during host reset. Otherwise, set the digital scanner's RS-232 parity to match the host setting.
Digital scanner emits low/high beeps during programming.	Input error or **Cancel** bar code was scanned.	Scan the correct numeric bar codes within range for the parameter programmed.
Digital scanner emits low/high/low/high beeps during programming.	Out of ADF parameter storage space.	Erase all rules and re-program with shorter rules.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps.	Clearing Code 39 buffer.	Normal when scanning the Code 39 Buffering **Clear Buffer** bar code or upon attempt to transmit an empty Code 39 buffer.
Digital scanner emits a power-up beep after changing USB host type.	The USB bus re-established power to the digital scanner.	Normal when changing USB host type.
Digital scanner emits one high beep when not in use.	In RS-232 mode, a <BEL> character was received and Beep on <BEL> option is enabled.	Normal when **Beep on <BEL>** is enabled and the digital scanner is in RS-232 mode.

NOTE If after performing these checks the digital scanner still experiences problems, contact the distributor or Zebra support. See *page xviii* for contact information.

Report Software Version Bar Code

When contacting Zebra support, a support representative may ask you to scan the bar code below to determine the version of software installed in the digital scanner.

Report Software Version

Technical Specifications

Table 3-2 *Technical Specifications*

Item	Description
Physical Characteristics	
Dimensions	5.512 in H x 3.232 in W x 3.150 in D 14.0 cm H x 8.21 cm W x 8.0 cm D
Weight	9.5 oz (269.3 g)
Voltage and Current	Idle: 5 +/-10% VDC @ 150 ma average Scanning: 5 +/-10% VDC @ 230 ma average
Performance Characteristics	
Light Source	Aiming dot: 625 nm LED Illumination: 630 nm LEDs
Imager Field of View (Horizontal x Vertical)	46º H x 29.5º V
Roll Pitch Yaw	360º +/- 65º +/- 60º
Swipe Speed	Up to 90 in (2.3 m) per second
Symbology Decode Capability	
1D	UPC/EAN (UPC-A/UPC-E/UPC-E1/EAN-8/EAN-13/JAN-8/JAN-13 plus supplementals, ISBN (Bookland), ISSN, Coupon Code), Code 39 (Standard, Full ASCII, Trioptic, Code 32 / Italian Pharmacode), Code 128 (Standard, Full ASCII, UCC/EAN-128, ISBT-128 Concatenated), Code 93, Codabar/NW7, 2 of 5 (Interleaved 2 of 5, Discrete 2 of 5, IATA, Chinese 2 of 5, Matrix 2 of 5, Code 11), MSI Plessey, GS1 DataBar (Omnidirectional, Truncated, Stacked, Stacked Omnidirectional, Limited, Expanded, Expanded Stacked)
PDF417 (and variants)	PDF417 (Standard, Macro), MicroPDF417 (Standard, Macro), Composite Codes (CC-A, CC-B, CC-C)
2D	TLC-39, Aztec (Standard, Inverse), MaxiCode, Data Matrix/ECC 200 (Standard, Inverse, GS1), QR Code (Standard, Inverse, Micro, GS1), Han Xin (Standard, Inverse)
Postal	U.S. Postnet and Planet, U.K. Post, Japan Post, Australian Post, Netherlands KIX Code, Royal Mail 4 State Customer, UPU FICS 4 State Postal, USPS 4CB, Mailmark
Minimum Resolution	Code 39 – 4 mil, UPC – 7.8 mil (60%), PDF417 – 5 mil, Data Matrix – 7.5 mil QR Code – 7.5 mil

Table 3-2 *Technical Specifications (Continued)*

Item	Description
Typical Working Distance	See *Decode Ranges on page 2-8*.
Imaging Characteristics	
Graphics Format Support	Images can be exported as bitmap, JPEG, or TIFF
Image Transfer Speed	USB 2.0: Up to 12 megabits/second RS-232: Up to 115 kb/second
Image Transfer Time	Typical USB application is ~0.2 seconds with a compressed JPEG of 100kb
Image Quality	120 PPI on a 4 x 6 in (10.2 x 15.2 cm) document @ 4.7 in (11.9 cm)
Interfaces Supported	USB, RS-232, RS-485 (IBM 46xx protocols), keyboard wedge
User Environment	
Operating Temperature	32º F to 104º F (0º C to 40º C)
Humidity	5% to 85% RH, non-condensing
Drop Specifications	Withstands multiple 5 ft. (1.5 m) drops to concrete
Sealing	IP52
Ambient Light Immunity	Immune to natural and artificial ambient light (i.e., sunlight, incandescent, fluorescent, mercury vapor, sodium vapor)
Options	
Electronic Article Surveillance (EAS)	Compatible with Checkpoint EAS deactivation systems
Mounting Options	Wall mount bracket, locking mount bracket

Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions

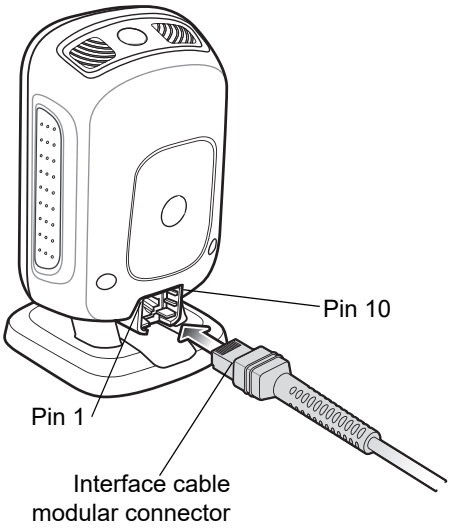


Figure 3-1 *Digital Scanner Cable Pinouts*

The signal descriptions in *Table 3-3* apply to the connectors on the DS9208 digital scanner and are for reference only.

Table 3-3 *DS9208 Digital Scanner Signal Pin-outs*

Pin	IBM	RS-232	Keyboard Wedge	USB
1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Jump to Pin 6
2	Power	Power	Power	Power
3	Ground	Ground	Ground	Ground
4	IBM_A(+)	TxD	KeyClock	Reserved
5	Reserved	RxD	TermData	D +
6	IBM_B(-)	RTS	KeyData	Jump to Pin 1
7	Reserved	CTS	TermClock	D -
8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
9	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
10	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

CHAPTER 4 USER PREFERENCES & MISCELLANEOUS OPTIONS

Introduction

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes each user preference feature and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

The digital scanner ships with the settings shown in *Table 4-1 on page 4-2* (also see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all host device and miscellaneous defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the digital scanner is powered down.

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen (when using the imaging engine). When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

If not using a USB cable, select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-4*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks indicate (*) default values.

* Indicates Default — *High Volume (0) — Feature/Option — Option Value

Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the beeper tone to high, scan the **High Frequency** (beeper tone) bar code listed under *Beeper Tone on page 4-6*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Serial Response Timeout** or **Data Transmission Formats**, require scanning several bar codes. See these parameter descriptions for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults

Table 4-1 lists defaults for user preferences parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
User Preferences			
Set Default Parameter	N/A	Set Defaults	*4-4*
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	236	Enable	*4-5*
Beep After Good Decode	56	Enable	*4-5*
Beeper Tone	145	Medium	*4-6*
Beeper Volume	140	High	*4-7*
Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout	403	5.0 Sec	*4-8*
Beeper Duration	628	Medium	*4-9*
Suppress Power-up Beeps	721	Do not suppress	*4-9*
Low Power Mode	128	Disable	*4-10*
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	146	1 Hour	*4-11*
Trigger Mode	138	Presentation	*4-13*
Trigger Aiming Pattern	306	Enable	*4-14*
Presentation Aiming Pattern	590	Disable	*4-15*
Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout	237	5 sec	*4-16*
Motion Detect Range	827	Full	*4-17*

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Decoding Illumination (Hand-Held Mode Only)	298	Enable	4-18
Post Decode Illumination	809	Always Off	4-18
Illumination Always On (Presentation Mode Only)	857	Illumination Automatically Controlled	4-19
Illumination Control Timer (Dim Mode)	663	1 minute	4-20
Presentation Mode Field of View	609	Full	4-22
Picklist Mode	402	Enabled in Trigger Mode	4-23
Continuous Bar Code Read	649	Disable	4-24
Unique Bar Code Reporting	723	Disable	4-24
Decode Session Timeout	136	9.9 Sec	4-25
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	137	0.4 Sec	4-25
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	144	0.0 Sec	4-26
Fuzzy 1D Processing	514	Enable	4-26
Decode Mirror Images	537	Auto	4-27
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	716	Enable in Both Hand-Held and Hands-Free Modes	4-28
PDF Prioritization	719	Disable	4-29
PDF Prioritization Timeout	720	200 ms	4-29
Multicode Mode	677	Disable	4-30
Multicode Expression	661	1	4-31
Multicode Mode Concatenation	717	Disable	4-36
Multicode Concatenation Symbology	722	Concatenate as PDF417	4-37
Miscellaneous Options			
Transmit Code ID Character	45	None	4-40
Prefix Value	99, 105	7013 <CR><LF>	4-41
Suffix 1 Value Suffix 2 Value	98, 104 100, 106	7013 <CR><LF>	4-41
Scan Data Transmission Format	235	Data as is	4-42
FN1 Substitution Values	103, 109	Set	4-43
Transmit “No Read” Message	94	Disable	4-44

User Preferences

Set Default Parameter

You can reset the digital scanner to two types of defaults: factory defaults or custom defaults. Scan the appropriate bar code below to reset the digital scanner to its default settings and/or set its current settings as custom defaults.

- **Set Defaults** - Scan this bar code to reset all default parameters as follows.
  - If you previously set custom defaults by scanning **Write to Custom Defaults**, scan **Set Defaults** to retrieve and restore the digital scanner's custom default settings.
  - If you did not set custom defaults, scan **Set Defaults** to restore the factory default values listed in *Table A-1*.
- **Set Factory Defaults** - Scan this bar code to restore the factory default values listed in *Table A-1.* This deletes any custom defaults set.
- **Write to Custom Defaults** - Scan this bar code to set the current digital scanner settings as custom defaults. Once set, you can recover custom default settings by scanning **Set Defaults**.

***Set Defaults**

Set Factory Defaults

Write to Custom Defaults

Parameter Bar Code Scanning

Parameter # 236

To disable the decoding of parameter bar codes, including the **Set Defaults** parameter bar codes, scan the **Disable Parameter Scanning** bar code below. To enable decoding of parameter bar codes, scan **Enable Parameter Scanning**.

***Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning**
(1)

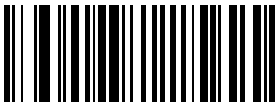
Disable Parameter Bar Code Scanning
(0)

Beep After Good Decode

Parameter # 56

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not the digital scanner beeps after a good decode. If selecting **Do Not Beep After Good Decode**, the beeper still operates during parameter menu scanning and to indicate error conditions.

***Beep After Good Decode**
(Enable)
(1)

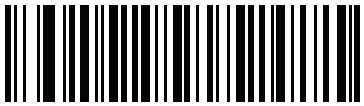


Do Not Beep After Good Decode
(Disable)
(0)

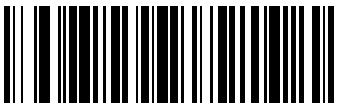
Beeper Tone

Parameter # 145

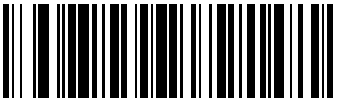
To select a decode beep frequency (tone), scan one of the following bar codes.



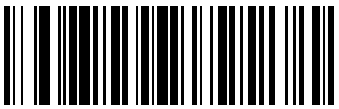
Off
(3)



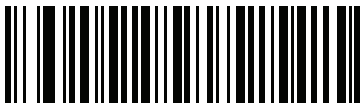
Low Tone
(2)



***Medium Tone**
(1)



High Tone
(0)



Medium to High Tone (2-tone)
(4)

Beeper Volume

Parameter # 140

To select a beeper volume, scan the **Low Volume, Medium Volume**, or **High Volume** bar code.

Low Volume
(2)

Medium Volume
(1)

***High Volume**
(0)

Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout

Parameter # 403

Use this parameter to set the length of time needed to hold the trigger to adjust the volume. The scanner changes volume and beeps with the new volume.

Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout 3 sec (30)

***Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout 5 sec (50)**

Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout 7 sec (70)

Beeper Duration

Parameter # 628

To select the duration for the beeper, scan one of the following bar codes.

Short
(0)

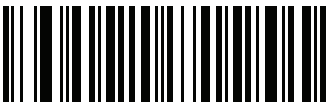
*** Medium**
(1)

Long
(2)

Suppress Power-up Beeps

Parameter # 721

Select whether or not to suppress the digital scanner's power-up beeps.



*** Do Not Suppress Power-up Beeps**
(0)

Suppress Power-up Beeps
(1)

Low Power Mode

Parameter # 128

This parameter determines whether or not the digital scanner enters low power mode after a decode attempt. If disabled, power remains on after each decode attempt.

***Disable Low Power Mode**
(0)

Enable Low Power Mode
(1)

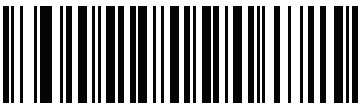
Time Delay to Low Power Mode

Parameter # 146

NOTE This parameter only applies when Low Power Mode is enabled.

This parameter sets the time the digital scanner remains active before entering low power mode. The digital scanner wakes upon trigger pull or when the host attempts to communicate with the digital scanner.

1 Second
(17)



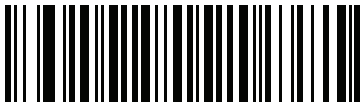
10 Seconds
(26)

1 Minute
(33)

5 Minutes
(37)

15 Minutes
(43)

Time Delay to Low Power Mode (continued)



30 Minutes
(45)

45 Minutes
(46)

***1 Hour**
(49)

3 Hours
(51)

6 Hours
(54)

9 Hours
(57)

Trigger Mode

Parameter # 138

Select one of the following trigger modes for the digital scanner:

- **Standard (Level)** - A trigger pull activates decode processing. Decode processing continues until the bar code decodes, you release the trigger, or the Decode Session Timeout occurs.
- **Presentation** - The digital scanner activates decode processing when it detects a bar code in its field of view. After a period of non-use, the digital scanner enters a low power mode, in which the LEDs turn off until the digital scanner senses motion.
- **Auto Aim** - This trigger mode turns on the LED aiming dot when you lift the digital scanner. A trigger pull activates decode processing. After 2 seconds of inactivity the aiming dot shuts off.

Standard (Level)
(0)

***Presentation**
(7)

Auto Aim
(9)

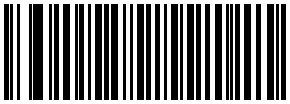
Trigger Aiming Pattern

Parameter # 306

Select **Enable Trigger Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern during bar code capture in trigger mode, or **Disable Trigger Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off.

This parameter does not apply to Snapshot Mode. See *Operational Modes on page 5-4*.

NOTE With *Picklist Mode on page 4-23* enabled, the decode aiming pattern flashes even when the **Decode Aiming Pattern** is disabled.



***Enable Trigger Aiming Pattern**
(2)

Disable Trigger Aiming Pattern
(0)

Presentation Aiming Pattern

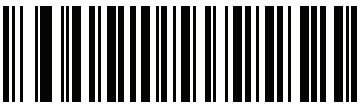
Parameter # 590

Select **Enable Presentation Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern during bar code capture in presentation mode, **Disable Presentation Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off, or **Enable Presentation Aiming Pattern on PDF** to project the aiming pattern when the digital scanner detects a 2D bar code.

This parameter does not apply to Snapshot Mode. See *Operational Modes on page 5-4*.

NOTE With *Picklist Mode on page 4-23* enabled, the decode aiming pattern flashes even when the **Decode Aiming Pattern** is disabled.

Enable Presentation Aiming Pattern
(1)



***Disable Presentation Aiming Pattern**
(0)

Enable Presentation Aiming Pattern on PDF
(2)

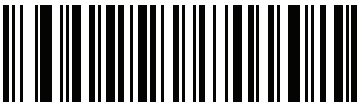
Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout

Parameter # 237

In momentary trigger mode, the aiming dot appears upon pressing the trigger. Once in this mode, upon each trigger press the scanner attempts to decode the bar code in front of it. After a period of inactivity while the trigger is not pressed, the scanner reverts to presentation mode where there is no illumination until an item is presented.

This parameter controls the length of the period of inactivity in momentary trigger mode before the scanner reverts to presentation mode.

Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout - 2 Seconds (20)



Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout - 3 Seconds (30)

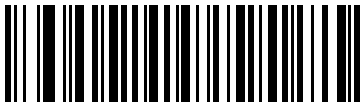
Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout - 4 Seconds (40)

***Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout - 5 Seconds (50)**

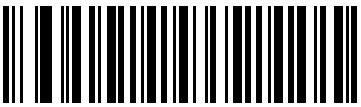
Motion Detect Range

Parameter # 827

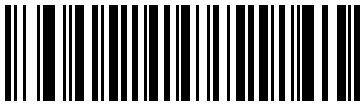
This parameter controls the distance, or range, at which the scanner detects object motion and then triggers while in Presentation Mode.



***Full Range**
(1)



Medium Range
(3)



Short Range
(8)

Decoding Illumination (Hand-Held Mode Only)

Parameter # 298

When in hand-held mode, selecting **Enable Decoding Illumination** causes the digital scanner to flash illumination to aid decoding. Select **Disable Decoding Illumination** to prevent the digital scanner from using decoding illumination.

Enabling illumination usually results in superior images. The effectiveness of the illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.

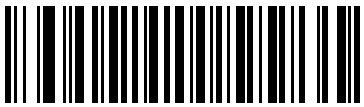
***Enable Decoding Illumination**
(1)

Disable Decoding Illumination
(0)

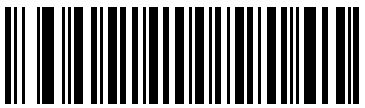
Post Decode Illumination

Parameter # 809

This parameter controls illumination after decode. Select **Always Off** to turn off illumination immediately after decode. Select **Always On** to keep Illumination on after decode so the scanner is ready for next decode, or to keep illumination on until timeout.



Always On
(0)



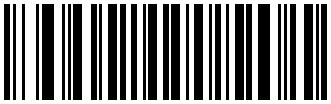
***Always Off**
(1)

Illumination Always On (Presentation Mode Only)

Parameter # 857

Select **Illumination Always On** to keep the illumination LEDs on all the time. In this mode, the scanner bypasses IR detection and aggressively decodes the bar code presented in its field of view.

NOTE If you select **Illumination Always On** and the **Post Decode Illumination** is disabled, **Illumination Always On** takes precedence.



***Illumination Automatically Controlled (0)**

Illumination Always On (1)

Illumination Control Timer (Dim Mode)

Parameter # 663

When *Illumination Always On (Presentation Mode Only)* is enabled, this parameter sets the time the scanner remains active before lowering illumination to dim mode until the next bar code is presented.

Disable
(0)

1 Second
(1)

10 Seconds
(10)

***1 Minute**
(17)

5 Minutes
(21)

15 Minutes
(27)

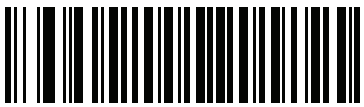
Illumination Control (continued)

30 Minutes
(29)

45 Minutes
(30)

1 Hour
(33)

3 Hours
(35)



6 Hours
(38)

9 Hours
(41)

Presentation Mode Field of View

Parameter # 609

This parameter defines the size of the field of view in presentation mode. A smaller field of view results in a smaller image to process and therefore faster decode times. A larger field of view supports larger symbologies but may slow decode time.

Small Field of View
(0)

Medium Field of View
(1)

***Full Field of View**
(2)

Picklist Mode

Parameter # 402

Picklist mode enables the digital scanner to decode only the bar code targeted by the aiming dot. Select one of the following picklist modes for the digital scanner:

- **Disabled** - Picklist mode is always disabled.
- **Enabled in Trigger Mode** - Picklist mode is enabled when the digital scanner is out of trigger mode and disabled when the digital scanner is in presentation mode.
- **Enabled Always** - Picklist mode is always enabled.

NOTE Picklist mode functions optimally when bar codes are vertically spaced a minimum of 15 mm edge to edge.

Disabled
(0)

***Enabled in Trigger Mode**
(1)

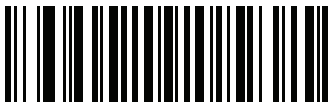
Enabled Always
(2)

Continuous Bar Code Read

Parameter # 649

Enable this to report every bar code while the trigger is pressed.

NOTE Zebra strongly recommends enabling *Picklist Mode* with this feature. Disabling Picklist Mode can cause accidental decodes when more than one bar code is in the imaging engine's field of view.



***Disable Continuous Bar Code Read**
(0)

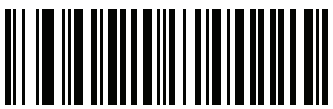
Enable Continuous Bar Code Read
(1)

Unique Bar Code Reporting

Parameter # 723

Enable this to report only unique bar codes while the trigger is pressed. This option only applies when **Continuous Bar Code Read** is enabled.

***Disable Continuous Bar Code Read Uniqueness**
(0)



Enable Continuous Bar Code Read Uniqueness
(1)

Decode Session Timeout

Parameter # 136

This parameter sets the maximum time decode processing continues during a scan attempt. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.5 to 9.9 seconds. The default timeout is 9.9 seconds.

To set a Decode Session Timeout, scan the bar code below. Next, scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired on time. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. For example, to set a Decode Session Timeout of 0.5 seconds, scan the bar code below, then scan the **0** and **5** bar codes. To correct an error or change the selection, scan **Cancel** on *page G-2*.

NOTE The Decode Session Timeout **cannot** be less than or equal to either *Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol* or *Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols*.

Decode Session Timeout

Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

Parameter # 137

Use this option in presentation mode and *Continuous Bar Code Read* to prevent the beeper from continuously beeping when a symbol is left in the digital scanner's field of view. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.0 to 9.9 seconds. The default interval is 0.4 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for the same symbol, scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.

NOTE The Timeout between Decodes, Same Symbol **cannot** be greater than or equal to the *Decode Session Timeout*.

Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

Parameter # 144

Use this option in presentation mode and Continuous Bar Code Read to control the time the scanner is inactive between decoding different symbols. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.0 to 9.9 seconds. The default is 0.0 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for different symbols, scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.

NOTE The Timeout between Decodes, Different Symbols **cannot** be greater than or equal to the *Decode Session Timeout*.

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

Fuzzy 1D Processing

Parameter # 514

This option is enabled by default to optimize decode performance on 1D bar codes, including damaged and poor quality symbols. Disable this only if you experience time delays when decoding 2D bar codes, or in detecting a no decode.

***Enable Fuzzy 1D Processing (1)**

Disable Fuzzy 1D Processing (0)

Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)

Parameter # 537

Select an option for decoding mirror image Data Matrix bar codes:

- Always - decode only Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images
- Never - do not decode Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images
- Auto - decode both mirrored and unmirrored Data Matrix bar codes.

Never
(0)

Always
(1)

***Auto**
(2)

Mobile Phone/Display Mode

Parameter # 716

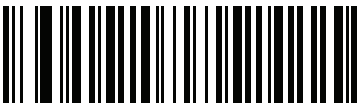
This mode improves bar code reading performance on mobile phones and electronic displays. Enable this in hand-held, hands-free, or both modes, or disable this.

NOTE If you enable this mode, for best performance also enable *Presentation Aiming Pattern on page 4-15*.

Disable Mobile Phone/Display Mode
(0)

Enable in Hand-Held Mode
(1)

Enable in Hands-Free Mode
(2)



***Enable in Both Modes**
(3)

PDF Prioritization

Parameter # 719

Enable this feature to delay decoding a 1D bar code (Code 128) by the value specified in *PDF Prioritization Timeout*. During that time the digital scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol (e.g., on a US driver's license), and if successful, reports this only. If it does not decode (can not find) a PDF417 symbol, it reports the 1D symbol after the timeout. The 1D symbol must be in the device's field of view for the digital scanner to report it. This parameter does not affect decoding other symbologies.

NOTE

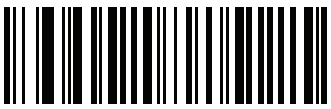
The 1D Code 128 bar code lengths include the following:

- 7 to 10 characters
- 14 to 22 characters
- 27 to 28 characters

In addition, a Code 39 bar code with the following lengths are considered to potentially be part of a US driver's license:

- 8 characters
- 12 characters

NOTE Disable *Picklist Mode on page 4-23* if enabling this parameter.



***Disable PDF Prioritization (0)**

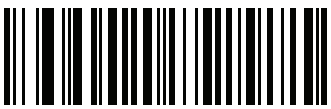
Enable PDF Prioritization (1)

PDF Prioritization Timeout

Parameter # 720

When *PDF Prioritization* is enabled, this timeout specifies how long the digital scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol before reporting the 1D bar code in the field of view.

Scan the following bar code, then scan four digits from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that specify the timeout in milliseconds. For example, to enter 400 ms, scan the following bar code, then scan 0400. The range is 0 to 5000 ms, and the default is 200 ms.



PDF Prioritization Timeout

Multicode Mode

Parameter # 677

Enable this parameter to allow multiple bar codes to decode upon one trigger event based on the programmed multicode expression. The digital scanner reports a successful decode and provides user indication only if it decodes all bar codes indicated by the multicode expression, otherwise the decode fails. Bar codes are transmitted in the order defined in the multicode expression. Disable this to operate in normal decode mode.

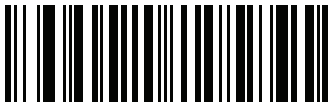
NOTES Enabling **Multicode Mode** disables *Picklist Mode*.

Multicode does not operate in presentation mode.

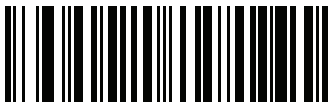
Do not use **Multicode Mode** if a trigger is set to **Laser Preferred Decoding**.

Do not use **Multicode Mode** if *Continuous Bar Code Read* is enabled.

When using this mode, always orient the digital scanner at the same distance and angle (perpendicular).



***Disable Multicode Mode**
(0)



Enable Multicode Mode
(1)

Multicode Expression

Parameter # 661

Use this feature to program a multicode expression for *Multicode Mode* (grid method). The default is 1, which indicates any bar code.

To set the multicode expression:

1. Scan the bar code below.
2. Scan bar codes from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide* to define the expression.
3. Scan the **End of Message** bar code from the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*

Multicode Expression

Multicode Expression Syntax: [n] [Element 1]; [Element 2]; ... [Element n];

Where *n* is the number of elements in the overall expression.

The multicode expression describes the bar code(s) that the digital scanner can expect to find in an image. Each element represents one bar code in the digital scanner's field of view. The order of elements in the expression is the order in which bar code data from each element transmits to the host. Elements are defined using one or more of the following methods:

By Region. This type of element limits decoding to a specific area within the digital scanner's field of view. Region coordinates are defined as the top left and bottom right corners of the region, expressed in percentages of the field of view. These can range from 0% to 100%, or 0x00 to 0x64 in hex, for both horizontal and vertical axes. A region element is constructed as:

[R] [4] [Top, Left] [Bottom, Right]

Where:

- [R] is the character R
- [4] is 0x04, indicating there are four bytes thereafter to describe the region
- [Top, Left] are two values representing the top left corner of the region
- [Bottom, Right] are two values representing the bottom right corner of the region

By Code Type. An element can specify a specific bar code symbology to find and decode somewhere in the field of view. A code type element is constructed as:

[C] [2] [Code Type]

Where:

- [C] is the character C
- [2] is 0x02, indicating there are two bytes thereafter to describe the code type
- [Code Type] is the desired symbology's parameter number (see *Chapter 10, Symbologies*). For single-byte parameter numbers, extend the value to two bytes by adding 00 before the parameter number.

Notes

When defining multicode expressions consider the following:

- Use the Code Type specifier if there are bar codes of more than one code type in view.
- Always use the Region specifier when there are multiple bar codes of the same code type.
- When transmission order is important (the first element in the expression transmits first), use either type to define the order.
- When there are unwanted bar codes in view, filter them out in one of two ways:
  - Use Code Type to specify only the target bar codes.
  - Use Region to identify only the target bar codes.
- If the expression does not contain a Region specifier, scanning angle and distance do not matter. If you specify a region you must scan in a fixed orientation and at a fixed distance. Because of this, it is preferable to use the Code Type specifier rather than the Region specifier.
- When defining regions:
  - Defining a region much larger than the bar code improves tolerance to scan distance and angle, but can cause a decode of a nearby bar code instead of the target bar code. Therefore, for best performance define larger regions when only a few bar codes are in view and those in view are widely separated.
  - Defining a region close to (or smaller than) the target bar code improves the probability of decoding this bar code rather than one nearby, but scan distance and angle must be more accurate. Therefore, for best performance define small regions when many bar codes are in view or those in view are close together.
- Use Region elements to improve decode speeds by reducing the image area to search for the target bar code.
- Specifying Code Type may also improve decode speeds for some code types.
- Although you can scan parameter bar codes when multicode mode is enabled, be aware of the following: If the multicode expression defined a region(s), to scan a parameter bar code you must position the bar code within the first region defined in the expression. In some cases, this first region is not the center of the image and aiming at the parameter bar code does not result in a successful decode.

The following examples show the multicode expressions in both hex and decimal formats, however in the sample figures the values are decimal. Be sure to use the correct base numbering system when creating an expression. A region specified as 0x00 0x00 0x64 0x32 represents a region with coordinates of Top-Left (0,0) and Bottom Right (100,50).

Example 1

To decode one Code 128 bar code anywhere in the image (even when bar codes of other types are in view), as in *Figure 4-1*, program the expression as follows:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

1 C 2 0 8 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is (spaces are for readability):

[MultiCode-Expression] 01 C 02 00 08 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x01 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x3b

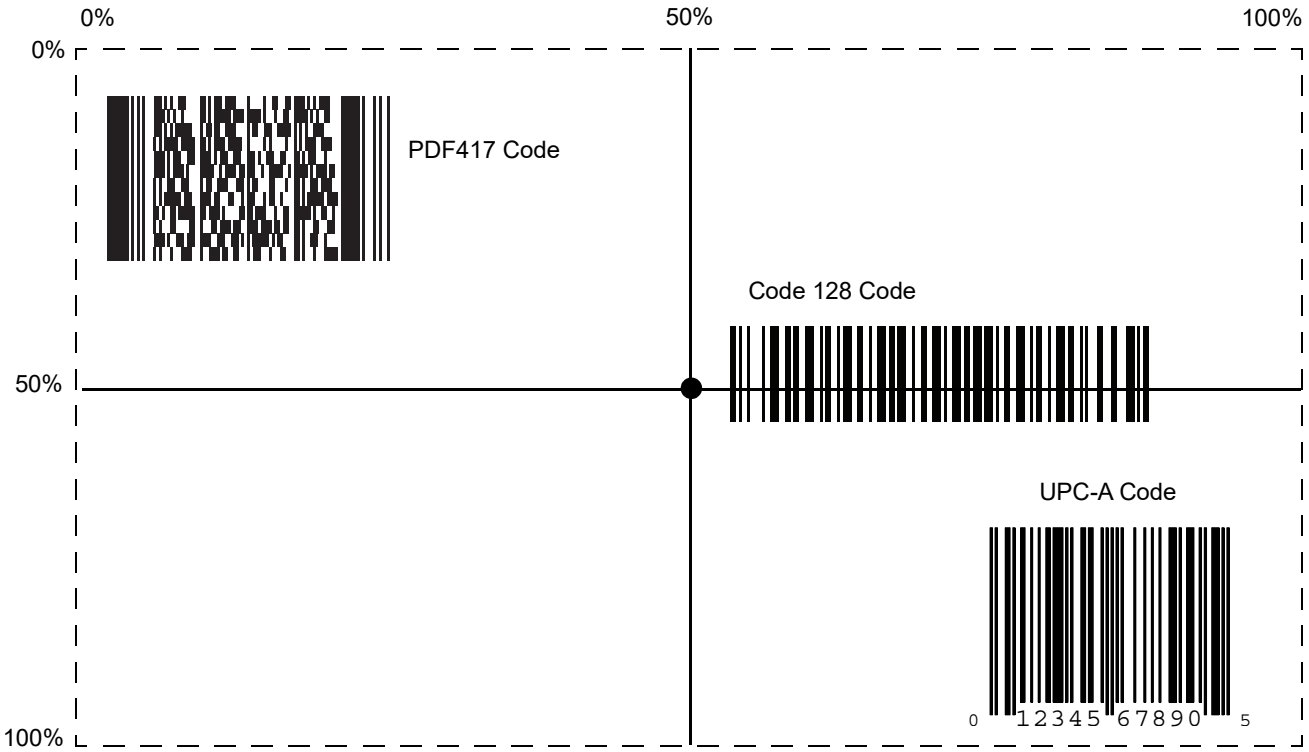


Figure 4-1 *Multicode Expression Example 1*

Example 2a

To decode a Code128 (Code Type=8) on the top half of the image and a PDF417 (Code Type=15) on the bottom half of the image, as in *Figure 4-2*, program the expression as follows:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

2 C 2 0 8 R 4 0 0 100 50 ; C 2 0 15 R 4 0 50 100 100 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is:

[MultiCode-Expression] 02 C 02 00 08 R 04 00 00 64 32 ; C 02 00 0F R 04 00 32 64 64 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x02 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x00 0x64 0x32 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x0F 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x32 0x64 0x64 0x3B

Example 2b

In *Figure 4-2*, if the bottom PDF417 bar code must transmit first, reverse the sequence of the two bar codes:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

2 C 2 0 15 R 4 0 50 100 100 ; C 2 0 8 R 4 0 0 100 50 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is:

[MultiCode-Expression] 02 C 02 00 0F R 04 00 32 64 64 ; C 02 00 08 R 04 00 00 64 32 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x02 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x0F 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x32 0x64 0x64 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x00 0x64 0x32 0x3B

Figure 4-2 *Multicode Expression Example 2*

Example 3

To decode the set of three bar codes while excluding the center Code 128 bar code, as in *Figure 4-3*, the expression is:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

3 C 2 0 15 R 4 0 0 50 50 ; C 2 [F0 24] R 4 70 0 100 40 ; C 2 0 8 R 4 65 60 100 100 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is:

[MultiCode-Expression] 03 C 02 00 0F R 04 00 00 32 32 ; C 02 F0 24 R 04 46 00 64 28 ;
C 02 00 08 R 04 41 3C 64 64 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x03 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x0F 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x00 0x32 0x32 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0xF0 0x24 0x52 0x04 0x46 0x00 0x64 0x28 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x52 0x04 0x41 0x3C 0x64 0x64 0x3B

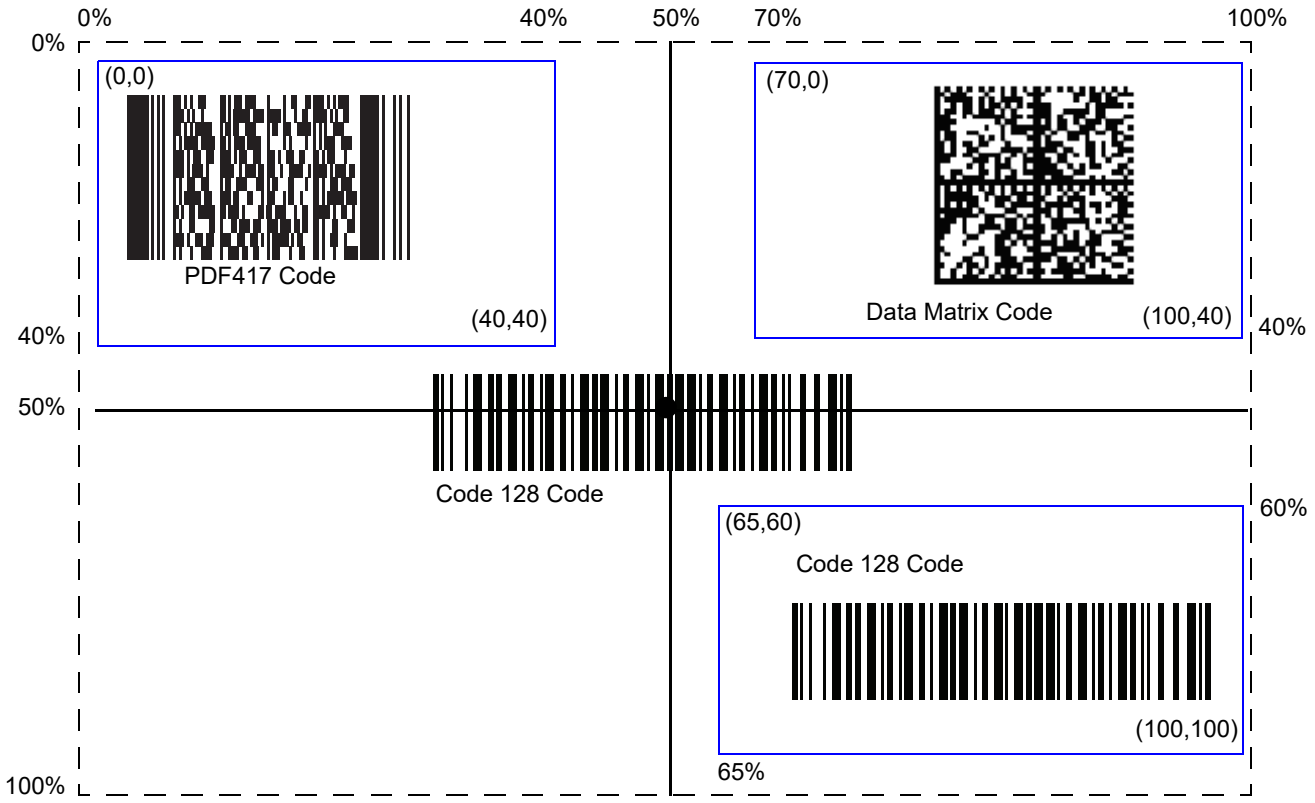


Figure 4-3 *Multicode Expression Example 3*

Multicode Mode Concatenation

Parameter # 717

Enable this parameter to transmit multiple decoded bar codes, as specified by the *Multicode Expression*, as one bar code. Use the *Multicode Concatenation Symbology* parameter to specify how the concatenated bar codes transmit.

Disable this to transmit decoded bar codes separately.

✓ ***NOTE*** When using Multicode Mode Concatenation, disable *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-40* and check digits.

Enable Multicode Mode Concatenation (1)

***Disable Multicode Mode Concatenation (0)**

Multicode Concatenation Symbology

Parameter # 722

Use this parameter to specify how to transmit the concatenated bar codes decoded as specified by the *Multicode Expression*. *Multicode Mode Concatenation* must be enabled to use this option.

Concatenation as Code 128
(1)

***Concatenation as PDF417**
(2)

Concatenation as Data Matrix
(3)

Concatenation as Maxicode
(4)

Multicode Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting Multicode Expression Programming

Use the following suggestions if encountering problems programming a multicode expression:

- Ensure the expression is valid. Invalid expressions are rejected during programming. When an expression is rejected the previous expression remains intact. If after programming the expression the digital scanner can still decode any bar code, the expression was possibly rejected.
- When programming the multicode expression via parameter bar code, the digital scanner generates beeps. If any of the following beeps do not sound during programming, an error occurred (see *Table 2-1 on page 2-2* and *Table 2-2 on page 2-4* for error indicators):
  - Scanning the **Multicode Expression** bar code produces a two-tone (same pitch) beep.
  - Scanning each value of the expression produces a two-tone (same pitch) beep.
  - Scanning the **End Of Message** bar code produces a four-tone (high-low-high-low) beep.
- Check the expression for syntax errors.
- Try programming a simple expression to ensure the syntax is correct. See *Examples of Simple Multicode Expressions*.
- Review *Notes on page 4-32* for additional hints.

Troubleshooting Multicode Mode Scanning and Decoding

Use the following suggestions if encountering problems using multicode mode:

- If the digital scanner appears to decode any single bar code instead of the intended multiple bar codes, ensure you enabled *Multicode Mode on page 4-30*. Programming the multicode expression does not enable multicode mode.
- When specifying **Region**, ensure:
  - Coordinates are within range the 0-100 decimal (or 0x00 - 0x64 hexadecimal).
  - Top, Left is above Bottom, Right. Top, Left is 0,0 (0x00, 0x00 hexadecimal), and Bottom, Right is 100,100 (0x64, 0x64 hexadecimal).
  - Regions for two or more bar codes do not overlap.
- When specifying **Code Type** ensure the digital scanner supports the code type. Try decoding a single bar code without using multicode. If it does not decode try enabling the bar code type. See *Chapter 10, Symbologies*.
- Experiment with simpler expressions, then add to it until you discover the source of the error. For example try the simplest expression (see *Examples of Simple Multicode Expressions*) and make sure you can scan a single bar code. If so, extend the expression by adding a second bar code, specifying a region, or specifying the code type. Verify that the digital scanner can decode this new expression. Continue adding to the expression until it fails to decode as expected, indicating the source of the error.
- Review *Notes on page 4-32* for additional hints.

Examples of Simple Multicode Expressions

The simplest multicode expression is:

- One bar code of any type, anywhere in the image.
- To program this use: **[MultiCode-Expression] 01 ; [End Of Message]**

Another simple multicode expression is:

- One Code 128 bar code, anywhere in the image.
- To program this use: **[MultiCode-Expression] 01 C 02 00 08 ; [End Of Message]**

Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters

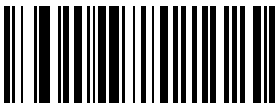
Transmit Code ID Character

Parameter # 45

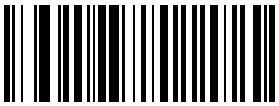
A Code ID character identifies the code type of a scanned bar code. This is useful when decoding more than one code type. In addition to any single character prefix already selected, the Code ID character is inserted between the prefix and the decoded symbol.

Select no Code ID character, a Symbol Code ID character, or an AIM Code ID character. For Code ID Characters, see *Symbol Code Identifiers on page E-1* and *AIM Code Identifiers on page E-3*.

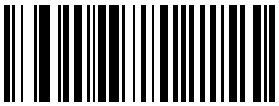
✓ ***NOTE*** If you enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character, and enable *Transmit "No Read" Message on page 4-44*, the digital scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.



Symbol Code ID Character
(2)



AIM Code ID Character
(1)



***None**
(0)

Prefix/Suffix Values

Key Category Parameter # P = 99, S1 = 98, S2 = 100

Decimal Value Parameter # P = 105, S1 = 104, S2 = 106

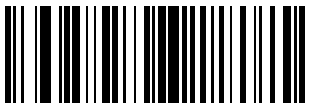
You can append a prefix and/or one or two suffixes to scan data for use in data editing. To set a value for a prefix or suffix, scan a four-digit number (i.e., four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*) that corresponds to that value. See *Table H-1 on page H-1* for the four-digit codes.

When using host commands to set the prefix or suffix, set the key category parameter to 1, then set the 3-digit decimal value. See *Table H-1 on page H-1* for the four-digit codes.

To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.

NOTE To use Prefix/Suffix values, first set the *Scan Data Transmission Format on page 4-42*.

Scan Prefix
(7)



Scan Suffix 1
(6)

Scan Suffix 2
(8)

Data Format Cancel

Scan Data Transmission Format

Parameter # 235

To set the scan data format, scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE If using this parameter do not use ADF rules to set the prefix/suffix.

To set values for the prefix and/or suffix, see *Prefix/Suffix Values on page 4-41*.

***Data As Is**
(0)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 1>
(1)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 2>
(2)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>
(3)

<PREFIX> <DATA >
(4)

Scan Data Transmission Format (continued)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1>
(5)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 2>
(6)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>
(7)

FN1 Substitution Values

Key Category Parameter # 103

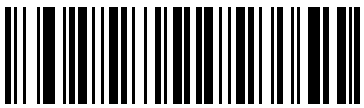
Decimal Value Parameter # 109

The wedge and USB HID keyboard hosts support a FN1 Substitution feature. Enabling this substitutes any FN1 character (0x1b) in an EAN128 bar code with a value. This value defaults to 7013 (Enter key).

When using host commands to set the FN1 substitution value, set the key category parameter to 1, then set the 3-digit keystroke value. See the ASCII character set table for the current host interface for the desired value.

To select a FN1 substitution value via bar code menus:

1. Scan the bar code below.



Set FN1 Substitution Value

2. Locate the keystroke desired for FN1 substitution in the ASCII character set table in the appropriate host interface chapter. Enter the 4-digit ASCII value by scanning each digit in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*.

To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.

See *USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution on page 6-12* to enable FN1 substitution for the USB HID keyboard.

Transmit “No Read” Message

Parameter # 94

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not to transmit a No Read message. Enable this to transmit the characters NR when a successful decode does not occur before trigger release or the **Decode Session Timeout** expires. See *Decode Session Timeout on page 4-25*. Disable this to send nothing to the host if a symbol does not decode.

✓ ***NOTE*** If you enable **Transmit No Read**, and also enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character for *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-40*, the digital scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.

Enable No Read
(1)

***Disable No Read**
(0)

CHAPTER 5 IMAGING PREFERENCES

Introduction

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes imaging preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

> ✓ ***NOTE*** Only the Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging interface supports image capture. See *USB Device Type on page 6-5* to enable this host.

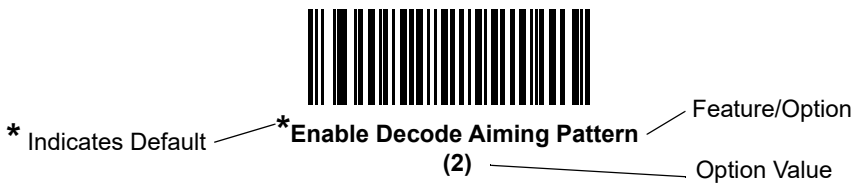
The digital scanner ships with the settings in *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults on page 5-2* (also see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all host device and miscellaneous defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when you power down the digital scanner.

> ✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

If not using a USB cable, select a host type after the power-up beeps sound. See *Chapter 6, USB Interface* and *Chapter 7, RS-232 Interface* for specific host information. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connecting to a new host.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-4*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to disable image capture illumination, scan the **Disable Image Capture Illumination** bar code under *Image Capture Illumination on page 5-5*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See these parameter descriptions for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults

Table 5-1 lists the defaults for imaging preferences parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 5-1 *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Imaging Preferences			
Operational Modes	N/A	N/A	*5-4*
Image Capture Illumination	361	Enable	*5-5*
Snapshot Mode Timeout	323	0 (30 seconds)	*5-6*
Snapshot Aiming Pattern	300	Enable	*5-6*
Image Cropping	301	Disable	*5-7*
Crop to Pixel Addresses	315 316 317 318	0 top 0 left 479 bottom 751 right	*5-8*
Image Size (Number of Pixels)	302	Full	*5-9*
Image Brightness (Target White)	390	180	*5-10*
JPEG Image Options	299	Quality	*5-10*
JPEG Target File Size	561	160 kB	*5-11*
JPEG Quality and Size Value	305	65	*5-11*

Table 5-1 *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Image Enhancement	564	Low (1)	5-12
Image File Format Selection	304	JPEG	5-13
Image Rotation	665	0	5-14
Bits per Pixel (BPP)	303	8 BPP	5-15
Signature Capture	93	Disable	5-16
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	313	JPEG	5-17
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	314	8 BPP	5-18
Signature Capture Width	366	400	5-19
Signature Capture Height	367	100	5-19
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	421	65	5-19

Imaging Preferences

The parameters in this chapter control image capture characteristics. Image capture occurs in all modes of operation, including decode and snapshot.

Operational Modes

The digital scanner has two modes of operation:

- Decode Mode
- Snapshot Mode.

Decode Mode

By default, when you pull the trigger the digital scanner attempts to locate and decode enabled bar codes within its field of view. The digital scanner remains in this mode until it decodes a bar code or you release the trigger.

Snapshot Mode

Use Snapshot Mode to capture a high-quality image and transmit it to the host. To temporarily enter this mode scan the **Snapshot Mode** bar code. While in this mode the digital scanner blinks the green LED at 1-second intervals to indicate it is not in standard operating (decode) mode.

In Snapshot Mode, the digital scanner turns on its laser aiming pattern to highlight the area to capture in the image. The next trigger pull instructs the digital scanner to capture a high quality image and transmit it to the host. A short time may pass (less than 2 seconds) between when the trigger is pulled and the image is captured as the digital scanner adjusts to the lighting conditions. Hold the digital scanner steady until the image is captured, denoted by a single beep.

If you do not press the trigger within the Snapshot Mode Timeout period, the digital scanner returns to Decode Mode. Use *Snapshot Mode Timeout on page 5-6* to adjust this timeout period. The default timeout period is 30 seconds.

To disable the laser aiming pattern during Snapshot Mode, see *Snapshot Aiming Pattern on page 5-6*.

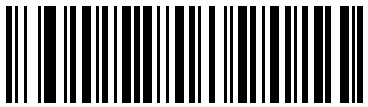
Snapshot Mode

Image Capture Illumination

Parameter # 361

Selecting **Enable Image Capture Illumination** causes illumination to turn on during every image capture. Disable illumination to prevent the digital scanner from using illumination.

Enabling illumination usually results in superior images. The effectiveness of illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.



***Enable Image Capture Illumination (1)**

Disable Image Capture Illumination (0)

Snapshot Mode Timeout

Parameter # 323

This parameter sets the amount of time the digital scanner remains in Snapshot Mode. The digital scanner exits Snapshot Mode when you pull the trigger, or when the Snapshot Mode Timeout elapses. To set this timeout value, scan the bar code below followed by a bar code from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. The default value is 0 which represents 30 seconds; values increment by 30. For example, 1 = 60 seconds, 2 = 90 seconds, etc.

Snapshot Mode Timeout

Snapshot Aiming Pattern

Parameter # 300

Select **Enable Snapshot Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern when in Snapshot Mode, or **Disable Snapshot Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off.

***Enable Snapshot Aiming Pattern**
(1)

Disable Snapshot Aiming Pattern
(0)

Image Cropping

Parameter # 301

This parameter crops a captured image. Select **Disable Image Cropping** to present the full 752 x 480 pixels. Select **Enable Image Cropping** to crop the image to the pixel addresses set in *Crop to Pixel Addresses on page 5-8*.

Enable Image Cropping
(1)

***Disable Image Cropping**
(Use Full 752 x 480 Pixels)
(0)

Crop to Pixel Addresses

Parameter # 315 (Top)
Parameter # 316 (Left)
Parameter # 317 (Bottom)
Parameter # 318 (Right)

If you selected **Enable Image Cropping**, set the pixel addresses from (0,0) to (751,479) to crop to.

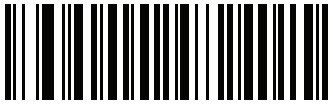
Columns are numbered from 0 to 751, rows from 0 to 479. Specify four values for Top, Left, Bottom, and Right, where Top and Bottom correspond to row pixel addresses, and Left and Right correspond to column pixel addresses. For example, for a 4 row x 8 column image in the extreme bottom-right section of the image set the following values:

Top = 476, Bottom = 479, Left = 744, Right = 751

To set the crop to pixel address, scan each pixel address bar code below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to crop the top pixel address to 3, scan 0, 0, 3. See *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

✓ ***NOTE*** The digital scanner has a cropping resolution of 4 pixels. Setting the cropping area to less than 4 pixels (after resolution adjustment, see *Image Size (Number of Pixels) on page 5-9*) transfers the entire image.

Top Pixel Address
(0 - 479 Decimal)



Left Pixel Address
(0 - 751 Decimal)

Bottom Pixel Address
(0 - 479 Decimal)

Right Pixel Address
(0 - 751 Decimal)

Image Size (Number of Pixels)

Parameter # 302

This option alters image resolution before compression. Multiple pixels are combined to one pixel, resulting in a smaller image containing the original content with reduced resolution.

Select one of the following values:

Resolution Value	Uncropped Image Size
Full	752 x 480
1/2	376 x 240
1/4	188 x 120

***Full Resolution**
(0)

1/2 Resolution
(1)

1/4 Resolution
(3)

Image Brightness (Target White)

Parameter # 390

Type: Byte

Range: 1 - 240

This parameter sets the Target White value used in Snapshot and Video Viewfinder mode when using auto exposure. White and black are defined as 240 decimal and 1, respectively. Setting the value to the factory default of 180 sets the white level of the image to ~180.

To set the Image Brightness parameter, scan **Image Brightness** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set an Image Brightness value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9. See *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

***180**

Image Brightness
(3 digits)

JPEG Image Options

Parameter # 299

Select an option to optimize JPEG images for either size or for quality. Scan the **JPEG Quality Selector** bar code to enter a quality value; the digital scanner then selects the corresponding image size. Scan the **JPEG Size Selector** bar code to enter a size value; the digital scanner then selects the best image quality.

***JPEG Quality Selector**
(1)

JPEG Size Selector
(0)

JPEG Target File Size

Parameter # 561

Type: Word

Range: 5-350

This parameter defines the target JPEG file size in terms 1 Kilobytes (1024 bytes). The default value is 160 kB which represents 160 Kilobytes.

CAUTION JPEG compress may take 10 to 15 seconds based on the amount of information in the target image. Scanning **JPEG Quality Selector** (default setting) on *page 5-10* produces a compressed image that is consistent in quality and compression time.

To set the JPEG Target File Size parameter, scan **JPEG Target File Size** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set an image file size value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9 in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*.

JPEG Target File Size
(3 digits)

JPEG Quality and Size Value

JPEG Quality = Parameter # 305

If you selected **JPEG Quality Selector**, scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value from 5 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.

JPEG Quality Value
(Default: 065)
(5 - 100 Decimal)

Image Enhancement

Parameter # 564

This parameter configures the digital scanner's Image Enhance feature. This feature uses a combination of edge sharpening and contrast enhancement to produce an image that is visually pleasing.

The levels of image enhancement are:

- Off (0)
- Low (1) - Default
- Med (2)
- High (3).

Off
(0)

***Low**
(1)

Medium
(2)

High
(3)

Image File Format Selector

Parameter # 304

Select an image format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The digital scanner stores captured images in the selected format.

BMP File Format
(3)

***JPEG File Format**
(1)

TIFF File Format
(4)

Image Rotation

Parameter # 665

This parameter controls the rotation of the image by 0, 90,180, or 270 degrees.

***Rotate 0°**
(0)

Rotate 90°
(1)

Rotate 180°
(2)

Rotate 270°
(3)

Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # 303

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing an image. Select **1 BPP** for a black and white image, **4 BPP** to assign 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel, or **8 BPP** to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

NOTE The digital scanner ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.

The digital scanner ignores 1 BPP for TIFF file formats, which only support **4 BPP** and **8 BPP**. 1 BPP is coerced to 4 BPP for TIFF file formats.

1 BPP
(0)

4 BPP
(1)

***8 BPP**
(2)

Signature Capture

Parameter # 93

A signature capture bar code is a special-purpose symbology which delineates a signature capture area in a document with a machine-readable format. The recognition pattern is variable so it can optionally provide an index to various signatures. The region inside the bar code pattern is considered the signature capture area. See *Appendix I, Signature Capture Code* for more information.

Output File Format

Decoding a signature capture bar code de-skews the signature image and converts the image to a BMP, JPEG, or TIFF file format. The output data includes the file descriptor followed by the formatted signature image.

File Descriptor			Signature Image
Output Format (1 byte)	Signature Type (1 byte)	Signature Image Size (4 bytes) (BIG Endian)	
JPEG - 1 BMP - 3 TIFF - 4	1-8	0x00000400	0x00010203….

To enable or disable Signature Capture, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Signature Capture (1)

***Disable Signature Capture (0)**

Signature Capture File Format Selector

Parameter # 313

Select a signature file format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The digital scanner stores captured signatures in the selected format.

BMP Signature Format
(3)

***JPEG Signature Format**
(1)

TIFF Signature Format
(4)

Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # 314

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing a signature. Select **1 BPP** for a black and white image, **4 BPP** to assign 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel, or **8 BPP** to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

✓ ***NOTE*** The digital scanner ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.

1 BPP
(0)

4 BPP
(1)

***8 BPP**
(2)

Signature Capture Width

Parameter # 366

The aspect ratio of the Signature Capture Width and Signature Capture Height parameters must match that of the signature capture area. For example, a 4 x 1 inch signature capture area would require a 4 to 1 aspect ratio of width to height.

To set the width of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Width** bar code, followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 752 decimal.

Signature Capture Width
(Default: 400)
(001 - 752 Decimal)

Signature Capture Height

Parameter # 367

To set the height of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Height** bar code, followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 480 decimal.

Signature Capture Height (Default: 100)
(001 - 480 Decimal)

Signature Capture JPEG Quality

Parameter # 421

Scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value from 005 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.

JPEG Quality Value (Default: 065)
(5 - 100 Decimal)

CHAPTER 6 USB INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host. The digital scanner connects directly to a USB host, or a powered USB hub, which powers it. No additional power supply is required.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

*Indicates Default — ***Disable Simulated Caps Lock** — Feature/Option

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting a USB Interface

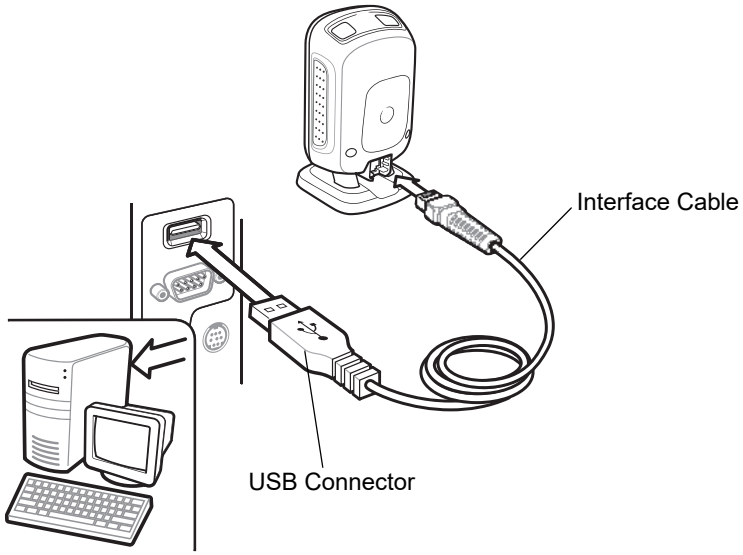


Figure 6-1 *USB Connection*

The digital scanner connects with USB-capable hosts including:

- Desktop PCs and notebooks
  - Apple™ iMac, G4, iBooks (North America only)
  - IBM SurePOS terminals
- Sun, IBM, and other network computers that support more than one keyboard.

The following operating systems support the digital scanner through USB:

- Windows® 98, 2000, ME, XP
- MacOS 8.5 and higher
- IBM 4690 OS.

The digital scanner also interfaces with other USB hosts which support USB Human Interface Devices (HID).

To set up the digital scanner:

✓ ***NOTE*** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 6-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

For digital scanners with the optional RFID module, connection requires a power supply.

1. Connect the modular connector of the USB interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*).
2. Plug the series A connector in the USB host or hub, or plug the Plus Power connector in an available port of the IBM SurePOS terminal.
3. Select the USB device type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *USB Device Type on page 6-5*.

4. On first installation when using Windows, the software prompts to select or install the Human Interface Device driver. To install this driver, provided by Windows, click **Next** through all the choices and click **Finished** on the last choice. The digital scanner powers up during this installation.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

If problems occur with the system, see *Troubleshooting on page 3-2*.

USB Parameter Defaults

Table 6-1 lists the defaults for USB host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on page *6-5*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 6-1 *USB Interface Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
USB Host Parameters		
USB Device Type	USB HID Keyboard	*6-5*
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	Enable	*6-7*
USB Keystroke Delay	No Delay	*6-7*
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	*6-8*
USB CAPS Lock Override	Disable	*6-8*
USB Ignore Unknown Characters	Enable	*6-9*
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	*6-9*
USB Beep Directive	Honor	*6-10*
USB Bar Code Configuration Directive	Honor	*6-10*
Emulate Keypad	Disable	*6-11*
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero	Disable	*6-11*
USB FN1 Substitution	Disable	*6-12*
Function Key Mapping	Disable	*6-12*
Convert Case	None	*6-13*
USB Static CDC	Enable	*6-13*
CDC Beep on BEL	Enable	*6-14*
Direct I/O Beeps	Honor	*6-14*
USB Polling Interval	3 msec	*6-15*

Table 6-1 *USB Interface Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
USB Fast HID	Enable	*6-17*
Quick Keypad Emulation	Disable	*6-17*
IBM Specification Version	Version 0 (Original)	*6-18*

USB Host Parameters

USB Device Type

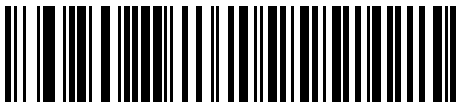
Select the desired USB device type. After selecting the device type, see *Appendix B, Country Codes* to select a keyboard type.

✓ ***NOTE*** When changing USB Device Types, the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.

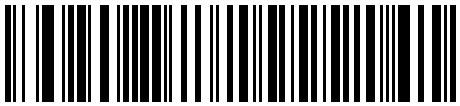
✓ ***NOTE*** Before selecting **USB CDC Host**, install the CDC INF file on the host to ensure the scanner does not stall during power up (due to a failure to enumerate USB). If the scanner stalls, to recover it:

1) Install the CDC INF file
   or
2) After power-up, hold the trigger for 10 seconds, which allows the scanner to power up using an alternate USB configuration. Upon power-up, scan another **USB Device Type**.

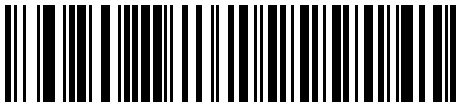
✓ ***NOTE*** Select **IBM Hand-Held USB** to disable data transmission when an IBM register issues a Scan Disable command. Aim, illumination, and decoding is still permitted. Select **OPOS (IBM Hand-held with Full Disable)** to completely shut off the scanner when an IBM register issues a Scan Disable command, including aim, illumination, decoding, and data transmission.



***USB HID Keyboard**



IBM Table Top USB

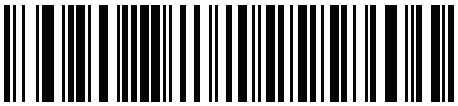


IBM Hand-Held USB

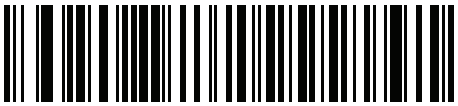
OPOS
(IBM Hand-held with Full Disable)

USB Device Type (continued)

Simple COM Port Emulation



USB CDC Host



SSI over USB CDC

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) without Imaging Interface

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking

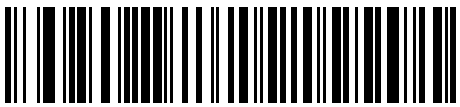
After selecting a SNAPI interface as the USB device type, select whether to enable or disable status handshaking.

*Enable SNAPI Status Handshaking

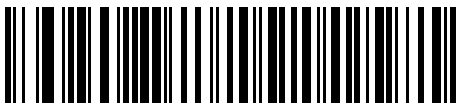
Disable SNAPI Status Handshaking

USB Keystroke Delay

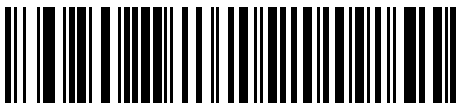
This parameter sets the delay, in milliseconds, between emulated keystrokes. Scan a bar code below to increase the delay when hosts require a slower transmission of data.



*No Delay



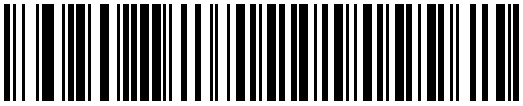
Medium Delay (20 msec)



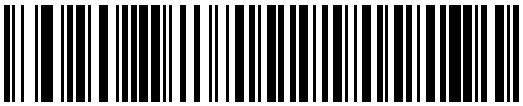
Long Delay (40 msec)

Simulated Caps Lock

Enable this to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** state. Note that this only applies to alpha characters.



***Disable Simulated Caps Lock**



Enable Simulated Caps Lock

USB CAPS Lock Override

This option applies only to the USB HID Keyboard device. Enable this to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the **Caps Lock** key. This setting is always enabled for the Japanese, Windows (ASCII) keyboard type and can not be disabled.

Override Caps Lock Key (Enable)

***Do Not Override Caps Lock Key (Disable)**

NOTE If both Simulated Caps Lock and Caps Lock Override are enabled, Caps Lock Override takes precedence.

USB Ignore Unknown Characters

This option applies only to the USB HID Keyboard device and IBM device. Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters**, for IBM devices, to prevent sending bar codes containing at least one unknown character are to the host, or for USB HID Keyboard devices, this sends the bar code characters up to the unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.

***Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Transmit)**

Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Disable)

USB Convert Unknown to Code 39

This option applies only to the IBM hand-held, IBM tabletop, and OPOS devices. Scan a bar code below to enable or disable converting unknown bar code type data to Code 39.

***Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39**

Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39

USB Beep Directive

This applies only to IBM hand-held, IBM tabletop, and OPOS devices. The host can send a beeper configuration request to the digital scanner. Scan **Ignore Beep Directive** to prevent the scanner from processing the host request. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.

***Honor Beep Directive**

Ignore Beep Directive

USB Bar Code Configuration Directive

This applies only to IBM hand-held, IBM tabletop, and OPOS devices. The host can enable and disable code types. Scan **Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive** to prevent the digital scanner from processing the host request. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.

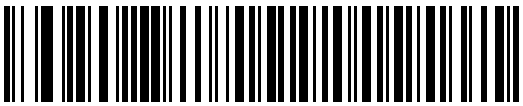
***Honor Bar Code Configuration Directive**

Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive

Emulate Keypad

Enable this to send all characters as ASCII sequences over the numeric keypad. For example ASCII A transmits as “ALT make” 0 6 5 “ALT Break”.

***Disable Keypad Emulation**



Enable Keypad Emulation

Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero

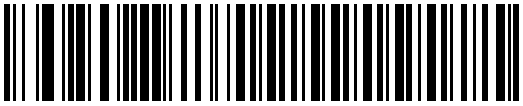
Enable this to send character sequences sent over the numeric keypad as ISO characters which have a leading zero. For example ASCII A transmits as “ALT MAKE” 0 0 6 5 “ALT BREAK”.

***Disable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero**

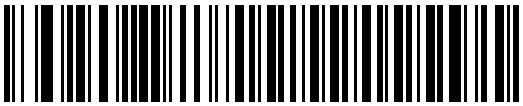
Enable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero

USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution

This option applies only to the USB HID Keyboard device. Enable this to replace any FN 1 characters in an EAN 128 bar code with a user-selected Key Category and value (see *FN1 Substitution Values on page 4-43* to set the Key Category and Key Value).



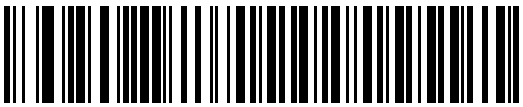
Enable



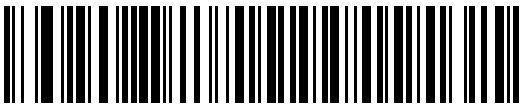
***Disable**

Function Key Mapping

ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as a control-key sequences (see *Table 6-2 on page 6-19*). Enable this parameter to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.



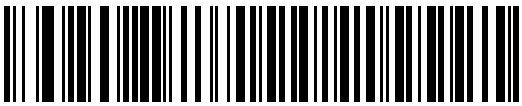
***Disable Function Key Mapping**



Enable Function Key Mapping

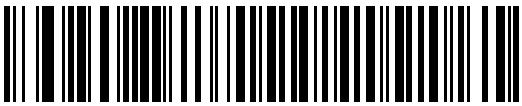
Convert Case

Enable this to convert all bar code data to the selected case.



***No Case Conversion**

Convert All to Upper Case

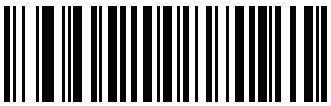


Convert All to Lower Case

USB Static CDC

When disabled, each device connected consumes another COM port (first device = COM1, second device = COM2, third device = COM3, etc.)

When enabled, each device connects to the same COM port.



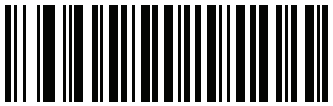
***Enable USB Static CDC**

Disable USB Static CDC

CDC Beep on <BEL>

If you enable this parameter, the digital scanner issues a beep when it detects a <BEL> character in USB CDC communications. <BEL> indicates an illegal entry or other important event.

.

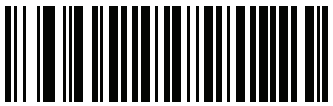


***Enable CDC Beep on <BEL>**

Disable CDC Beep on <BEL>

Direct I/O Beep

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a Direct IO Beep from the USB host. If you select **Ignore Direct IO Beep**, the scanner does not sound beeps on this command. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.



***Honor Direct IO Beep**

Ignore Direct IO Beep

USB Transmission Speed Parameters

Use the following parameters to speed USB data transmission:

- *USB Polling Interval* - When using more current USB systems, use this parameter to set a lower interval in order to increase data transmission speed.
- *USB Fast HID* - When configured as a USB HID keyboard device, use this parameter to increase the data transmission speed of printable (7-bit) ASCII characters.
- *Quick Keypad Emulation* - When configured as a USB HID keyboard device, use this parameter to increase the data transmission speed of a mix of both printable (7-bit) and full (8-bit) ASCII characters.

NOTE Enabling *Emulate Keypad on page 6-11* or *Quick Keypad Emulation on page 6-17* overrides *USB Fast HID*.

USB Polling Interval

This option speeds data transmission for all USB devices except CDC. Scan a bar code below to set the polling interval. The polling interval determines the rate at which data can be sent between the scanner and the host computer. A lower number indicates a faster data rate.

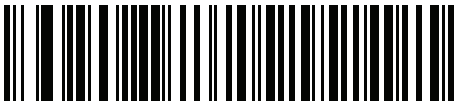
Changing the polling interval re-initializes the scanner.

CAUTION Ensure the host can handle the selected data rate. Selecting a data rate that is too fast for the host can result in lost data.

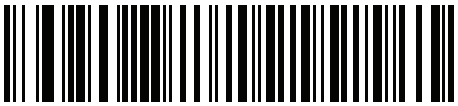
1 msec

2 msec

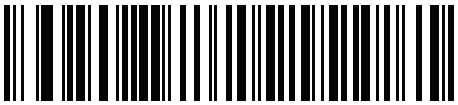
USB Polling Interval (continued)



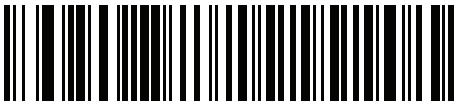
*3 msec



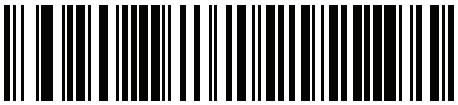
4 msec



5 msec

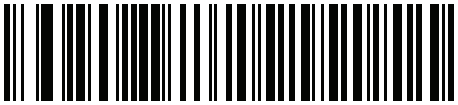


6 msec



7 msec

8 msec



9 msec

USB Fast HID

This option transmits USB HID keyboard data at a faster rate.

NOTE Enabling *Emulate Keypad on page 6-11* or *Quick Keypad Emulation* overrides *USB Fast HID*.

*Enable

Disable

Quick Keypad Emulation

This option applies only to the USB HID Keyboard device when *Emulate Keypad on page 6-11* is enabled. This parameter enables a quicker method of emulation utilizing the numeric keypad. The default value is **Disable**.

NOTE Enabling *Emulate Keypad on page 6-11* or *Quick Keypad Emulation* overrides *USB Fast HID*.

Enable

*Disable

IBM Specification Version

When the IBM Specification Level is set to **Version 0 (Original)**, the following code types are sent as Unknown:

- Data Matrix
- QR Code
- MicroQR Code
- Aztec

When the level is set to **Version 2.2**, the code types are sent with the appropriate IBM identifiers.

***IBM Specification Level Version 0 (Original)**

IBM Specification Level Version 2.2

ASCII Character Set for USB

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1000	%U	CTRL 2
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable Function Key Mapping on page 6-12. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [/**ESC**[1]
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6

[1]**The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable Function Key Mapping on page 6-12. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.**

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable Function Key Mapping on page 6-12. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	`
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable Function Key Mapping on page 6-12. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable Function Key Mapping on page 6-12. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-3 *USB ALT Key Character Set*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table 6-4 *USB GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table 6-4 *USB GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z
Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.	

Table 6-5 *USB F Key Character Set*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F1
5002	F2
5003	F3
5004	F4
5005	F5
5006	F6
5007	F7
5008	F8
5009	F9
5010	F10
5011	F11
5012	F12
5013	F13
5014	F14
5015	F15
5016	F16
5017	F17
5018	F18
5019	F19
5020	F20
5021	F21
5022	F22
5023	F23
5024	F24

Table 6-6 *USB Numeric Keypad Character Set*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table 6-7 *USB Extended Keypad Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	PgUp
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Down Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

CHAPTER 7 RS-232 INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host. Use the RS-232 interface to connect the digital scanner to point-of-sale devices, host computers, or other devices with an available RS-232 port (e.g., com port).

If your host does not appear in *Table 7-2*, refer to the documentation for the host device to set communication parameters to match the host.

NOTE The digital scanner uses TTL RS-232 signal levels, which interface with most system architectures. For system architectures requiring RS-232C signal levels, Zebra offers different cables providing TTL-to-RS-232C conversion. Contact Zebra Support for more information.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

* Indicates Default — ***Baud Rate 57,600** — Feature/Option

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting an RS-232 Interface

Connect the digital scanner directly to the host computer.

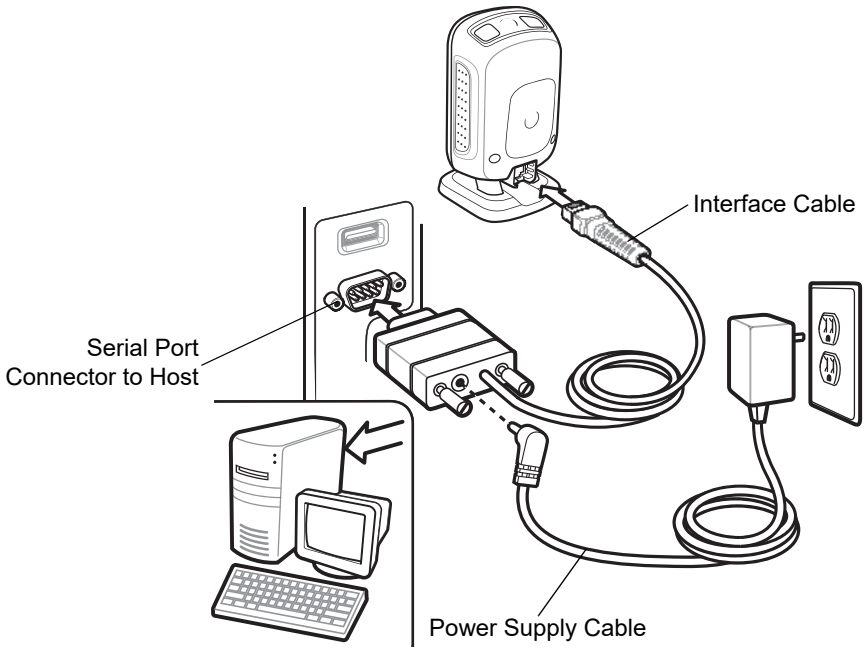


Figure 7-1 *RS-232 Direct Connection*

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 7-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the RS-232 interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*).
2. Connect the other end of the RS-232 interface cable to the serial port on the host.
3. Connect the power supply to the serial connector end of the RS-232 interface cable. Plug the power supply into an appropriate outlet.
4. Select the RS-232 host type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *RS-232 Host Types on page 7-6*.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

RS-232 Parameter Defaults

Table 7-1 lists the defaults for RS-232 host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the RS-232 Host Parameters section beginning on page *7-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 7-1 *RS-232 Host Default Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
RS-232 Host Parameters		
RS-232 Host Types	Standard	*7-6*
Baud Rate	9600	*7-8*
Parity Type	None	*7-9*
Stop Bits	1	*7-10*
Data Bits	8-bit	*7-10*
Check Receive Errors	Enable	*7-11*
Hardware Handshaking	None	*7-11*
Software Handshaking	None	*7-13*
Host Serial Response Timeout	2 Sec	*7-15*
RTS Line State	Low RTS	*7-16*
Beep on <BEL>	Disable	*7-16*
Intercharacter Delay	0 msec	*7-17*
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	Normal Operation	*7-18*
Ignore Unknown Characters	Send Bar Code	*7-18*
Note: The DS9208 supports one stop bit only.		

RS-232 Host Parameters

Various RS-232 hosts use their own parameter default settings. Selecting standard, ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron, or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG bar code readers) sets the defaults listed in *Table 7-2*.

Table 7-2 *Terminal Specific RS-232*

Parameter	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
Baud Rate	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600
Parity	Even	None	Odd	Odd	Even	None	Even
Stop Bit Select	One	One	One	One	One	One	One
ASCII Format	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit
Hardware Handshaking	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	RTS/CTS Option 3	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	None	None
Software Handshaking	None	None	None	None	ACK/NAK	None	None
Serial Response Timeout	9.9 Sec.	2 Sec.	None	None	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.
RTS Line State	High	Low	Low	Low = No data to send	Low	High	High
Beep On <BEL>	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable
Transmit Code ID	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data Transmission Format	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/Suffix
Prefix	None	None	None	None	STX (1002)	None	STX (1002)
Suffix	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	ETX (1003)	CR (1013)	CR (1013) ETX (1003)

In the Nixdorf Mode B, if CTS is low, scanning is disabled. When CTS is high, scanning is enabled.
If you scan Nixdorf Mode B without connecting the digital scanner to the proper host, it may appear unable to scan. If this happens, scan a different RS-232 host type within 5 seconds of cycling power to the digital scanner.
The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan *Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (1) on page 4-5, then change the host selection.

RS-232 Host Parameters (continued)

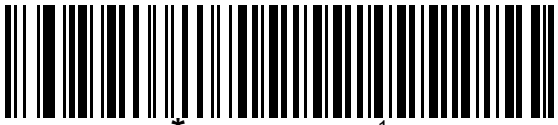
Selecting ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron, or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG bar code readers) enables the transmission of code ID characters listed in *Table 7-3*. These code ID characters are not programmable and are separate from the Transmit Code ID feature. Do not enable the Transmit Code ID feature for these terminals.

Table 7-3 *Terminal Specific Code ID Characters*

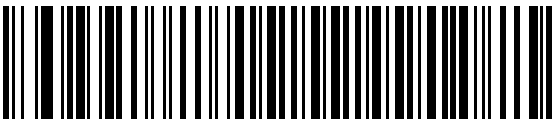
Code Type	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/ OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
UPC-A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
UPC-E	E	E	C	C	C	E	None
EAN-8/JAN-8	FF	FF	B	B	B	FF	None
EAN-13/JAN-13	F	F	A	A	A	F	A
Bookland EAN	F	F	A	A	A	F	None
Code 39	C <len>	None	M	M	M <len>	C <len>	3
Code 39 Full ASCII	None	None	M	M	None	None	3
Trioptic	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
Code 32	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
Codabar	N <len>	None	N	N	N <len>	N <len>	None
Code 128	L <len>	None	K	K	K <len>	L <len>	5
GS1-128	L <len>	None	P	P	P <len>	L <len>	5
Code 93	None	None	L	L	L <len>	None	None
I 2 of 5	I <len>	None	I	I	I <len>	I <len>	1
D 2 of 5	H <len>	None	H	H	H <len>	H <len>	2
MSI	None	None	O	O	O <len>	None	None
Code 11	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
IATA	H<len>	None	H	H	H<len>	H<len>	2
GS1 Databar Variants	None	None	E	E	None	None	None
PDF417	None	None	Q	Q	None	None	6
MicroPDF417	None	None	S	S	None	None	6
Data Matrix	None	None	R	R	None	None	4
Maxicode	None	None	T	T	None	None	None
QR Codes	None	None	U	U	None	None	7
Aztec/Aztec Rune	None	None	V	V	None	None	8

RS-232 Host Types

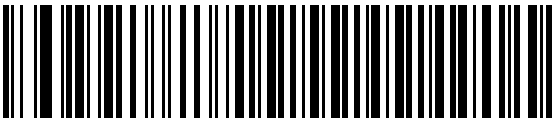
To select an RS-232 host interface, scan one of the following bar codes.



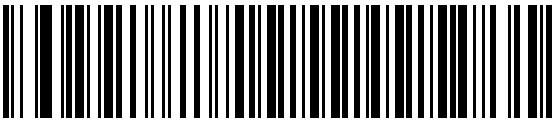
*Standard RS-232[1]



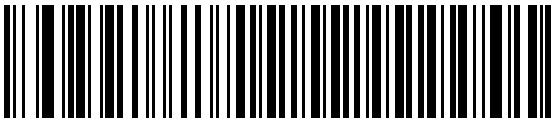
ICL RS-232



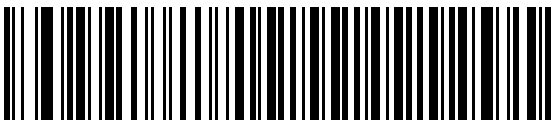
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode A



Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode B



Olivetti ORS4500

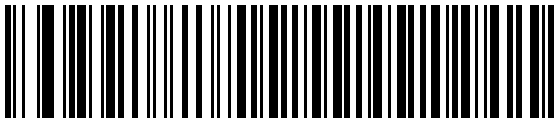


Omron

[1]Scanning **Standard RS-232** activates the RS-232 driver, but does not change port settings (e.g., parity, data bits, handshaking). Selecting another RS-232 host type bar code changes these settings.

RS-232 Host Types (continued)

OPOS/JPOS



Fujitsu RS-232

CUTE [1]

[1]The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan *Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (1) on page 4-5, then change the host selection.

Baud Rate

Baud rate is the number of bits of data transmitted per second. Set the digital scanner's baud rate to match the baud rate setting of the host device. Otherwise, data may not reach the host device or may reach it in distorted form.

✓ ***NOTE*** The digital scanner does not support baud rates below 9600.

***Baud Rate 9600**

Baud Rate 19,200

Baud Rate 38,400

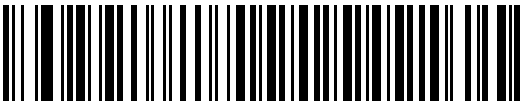
Baud Rate 57,600

Baud Rate 115,200

Parity

A parity check bit is the most significant bit of each ASCII coded character. Select the parity type according to host device requirements.

- Select **Odd** parity to set the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an odd number of 1 bits.
- Select **Even** parity to set the parity bit value is set to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an even number of 1 bits.
- Select **None** when no parity bit is required.



Odd

Even

***None**

Stop Bits

The stop bit(s) at the end of each transmitted character marks the end of transmission of one character and prepares the receiving device for the next character in the serial data stream. Select the number of stop bits (one or two) based on the number the receiving terminal is programmed to accommodate. Set the number of stop bits to match host device requirements.

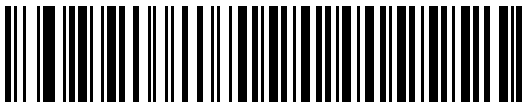
*1 Stop Bit

2 Stop Bits

Data Bits

This parameter allows the digital scanner to interface with devices requiring a 7-bit or 8-bit ASCII protocol.

7-Bit

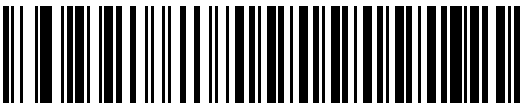


*8-Bit

Check Receive Errors

Select whether or not to check the parity, framing, and overrun of received characters. The parity value of received characters is verified against the parity parameter selected above.

***Check For Received Errors**



Do Not Check For Received Errors

Hardware Handshaking

The data interface consists of an RS-232 port designed to operate either with or without the hardware handshaking lines, *Request to Send* (RTS), and *Clear to Send* (CTS).

Disable Standard RTS/CTS handshaking to transmit scan data as it becomes available. Select Standard RTS/CTS handshaking to transmit scan data according to the following sequence:

- The digital scanner reads the CTS line for activity. If CTS is asserted, the scanner waits up to Host Serial Response Timeout for the host to de-assert the CTS line. If, after Host Serial Response Timeout (default), the CTS line is still asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error, and discards any scanned data.
- When the CTS line is de-asserted, the digital scanner asserts the RTS line and waits up to Host Serial Response Timeout for the host to assert CTS. When the host asserts CTS, the scanner transmits data. If, after Host Serial Response Timeout (default), the CTS line is not asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error, and discards the data.
- When data transmission completes, the digital scanner de-asserts RTS 10 msec after sending the last character.
- The host should respond by negating CTS. The digital scanner checks for a de-asserted CTS upon the next transmission of data.

During the transmission of data, the CTS line should be asserted. If CTS is deasserted for more than 50 ms between characters, the digital scanner aborts transmission, sounds a transmission error, and discards the data.

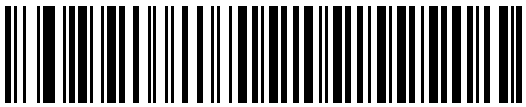
If this communication sequence fails, the digital scanner issues an error indication. In this case, the data is lost and must be rescanned.

If hardware handshaking and software handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

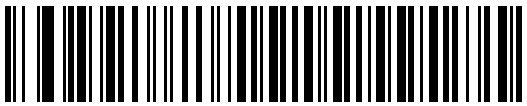
✓ ***NOTE*** The DTR signal is jumpered to the active state.

Hardware Handshaking (continued)

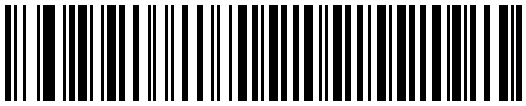
- **None**: Scan this bar code to disable hardware handshaking.
- **Standard RTS/CTS**: Scan this bar code to select Standard RTS/CTS Hardware Handshaking.
- **RTS/CTS Option 1**: If you select RTS/CTS Option 1, the digital scanner asserts RTS before transmitting and ignores the state of CTS. The scanner de-asserts RTS when the transmission completes.
- **RTS/CTS Option 2**: If you select Option 2, RTS is always high or low (user-programmed logic level). However, the digital scanner waits for CTS to be asserted before transmitting data. If CTS is not asserted within Host Serial Response Timeout (default), the scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.
- **RTS/CTS Option 3**: If you select Option 3, the digital scanner asserts RTS prior to any data transmission, regardless of the state of CTS. The scanner waits up to Host Serial Response Timeout (default) for CTS to be asserted. If CTS is not asserted during this time, the scanner issues an error indication and discards the data. The digital scanner de-asserts RTS when transmission is complete.



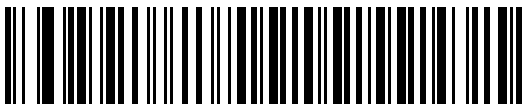
***None**



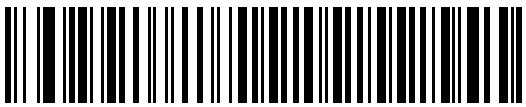
Standard RTS/CTS



RTS/CTS Option 1



RTS/CTS Option 2



RTS/CTS Option 3

Software Handshaking

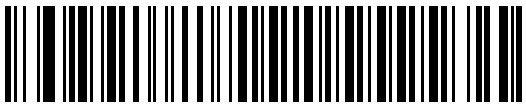
This parameter offers control of the data transmission process in addition to, or instead of, that offered by hardware handshaking. There are five options.

If software handshaking and hardware handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

- **None**: Select this to transmit data immediately. The digital scanner expects no response from the host.
- **ACK/NAK**: If you select this option, after transmitting data, the digital scanner expects either an ACK or NAK response from the host. When it receives a NAK, the scanner transmits the same data again and waits for either an ACK or NAK. After three unsuccessful attempts to send data after receiving NAKs, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.

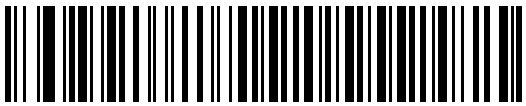
  The digital scanner waits up to the programmable Host Serial Response Timeout to receive an ACK or NAK. If the scanner does not get a response in this time, it issues an error indication and discards the data. There are no retries when a timeout occurs.
- **ENQ**: If you select this option, the digital scanner waits for an ENQ character from the host before transmitting data. If it does not receive an ENQ within the Host Serial Response Timeout, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data. The host must transmit an ENQ character at least every Host Serial Response Timeout to prevent transmission errors.
- **ACK/NAK with ENQ**: This combines the two previous options. For re-transmissions of data, due to a NAK from the host, an additional ENQ is not required.
- **XON/XOFF**: An XOFF character turns the digital scanner transmission off until the scanner receives an XON character. There are two situations for XON/XOFF:
  - The digital scanner receives an XOFF before has data to send. When the scanner has data to send, it waits up to Host Serial Response Timeout for an XON character before transmission. If it does not receive the XON within this time, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.
  - The digital scanner receives an XOFF during a transmission. Data transmission then stops after sending the current byte. When the digital scanner receives an XON character, it sends the rest of the data message. The digital scanner waits indefinitely for the XON.

Software Handshaking (continued)

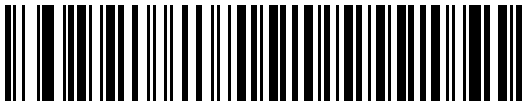


*None

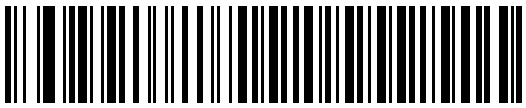
ACK/NAK



ENQ



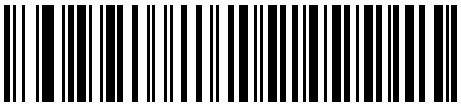
ACK/NAK with ENQ



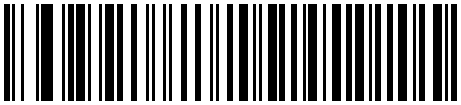
XON/XOFF

Host Serial Response Timeout

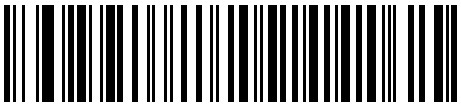
This parameter specifies how long the digital scanner waits for an ACK, NAK, or CTS before determining that a transmission error occurred. This only applies when in one of the ACK/NAK software handshaking modes, or RTS/CTS hardware handshaking mode.



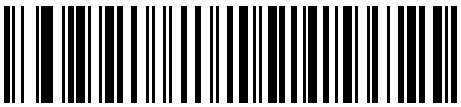
***Minimum: 2 Sec**



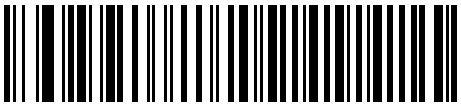
Low: 2.5 Sec



Medium: 5 Sec



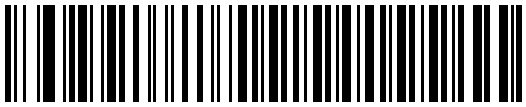
High: 7.5 Sec



Maximum: 9.9 Sec

RTS Line State

This parameter sets the idle state of the Serial Host RTS line. Scan a bar code below to select **Low RTS** or **High RTS** line state.

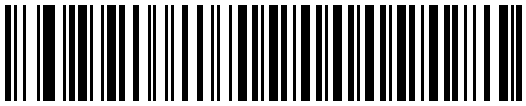


***Host: Low RTS**

Host: High RTS

Beep on <BEL>

If you enable this parameter, the digital scanner issues a beep when it detects a <BEL> character on the RS-232 serial line. <BEL> indicates an illegal entry or other important event.

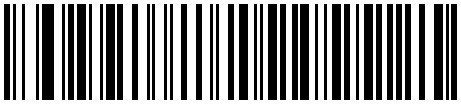


Beep On <BEL> Character (Enable)

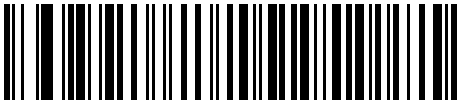
***Do Not Beep On <BEL> Character (Disable)**

Intercharacter Delay

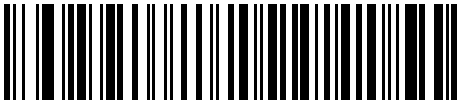
This parameter specifies the intercharacter delay inserted between character transmissions.



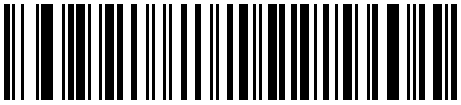
***Minimum: 0 msec**



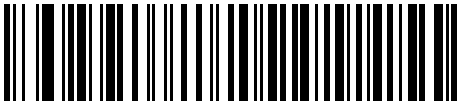
Low: 25 msec



Medium: 50 msec



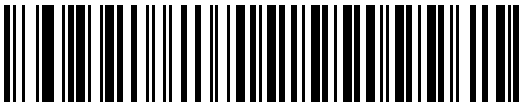
High: 75 msec



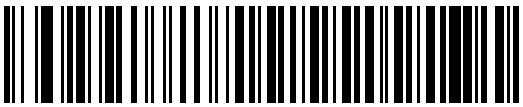
Maximum: 99 msec

Nixdorf Beep/LED Options

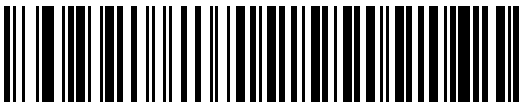
If you selected Nixdorf Mode B, this indicates when the digital scanner beeps and turns on its LED after a decode.



***Normal Operation**
(Beep/LED immediately after decode)



Beep/LED After Transmission

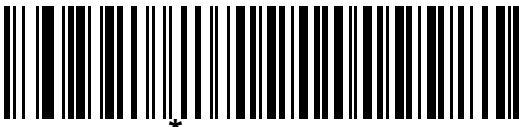


Beep/LED After CTS Pulse

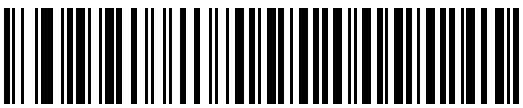
Ignore Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.



***Send Bar Code**
(with unknown characters)



Do Not Send Bar Codes
(with unknown characters)

ASCII Character Set for RS-232

You can assign the values in *Table 7-4* as prefixes or suffixes for ASCII character data transmission.

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1000	%U	NUL
1001	$A	SOH
1002	$B	STX
1003	$C	ETX
1004	$D	EOT
1005	$E	ENQ
1006	$F	ACK
1007	$G	BELL
1008	$H	BCKSPC
1009	$I	HORIZ TAB
1010	$J	LF/NW LN
1011	$K	VT
1012	$L	FF
1013	$M	CR/ENTER
1014	$N	SO
1015	$O	SI
1016	$P	DLE
1017	$Q	DC1/XON
1018	$R	DC2
1019	$S	DC3/XOFF
1020	$T	DC4
1021	$U	NAK
1022	$V	SYN
1023	$W	ETB
1024	$X	CAN
1025	$Y	EM
1026	$Z	SUB
1027	%A	ESC

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1028	%B	FS
1029	%C	GS
1030	%D	RS
1031	%E	US
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	"
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	`
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

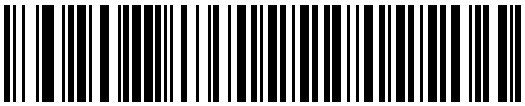
Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~
1127		Undefined
7013		ENTER

CHAPTER 8 IBM 468X / 469X INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with an IBM 468X/469X host.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting to an IBM 468X/469X Host

Connect the digital scanner directly to the host interface.

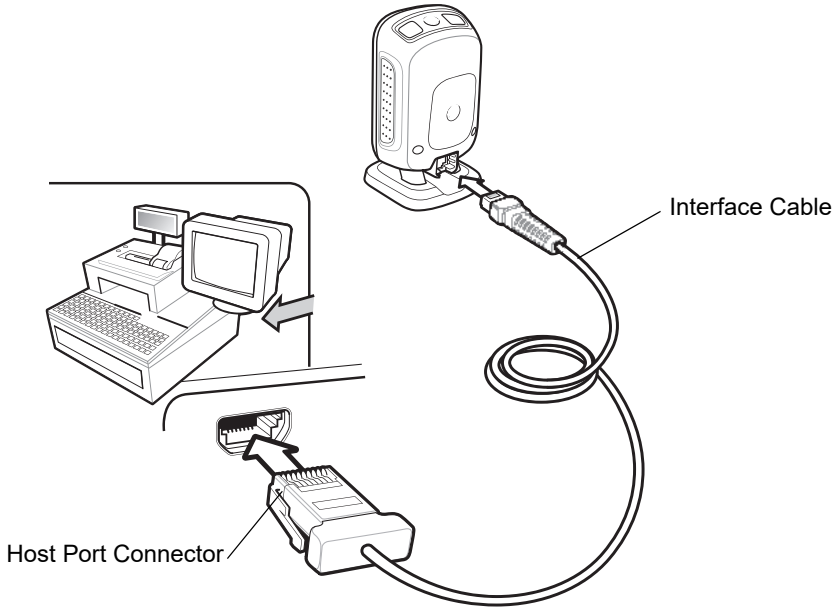


Figure 8-1 *IBM Direct Connection*

> ***NOTE*** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 8-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
2. Connect the other end of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the appropriate port on the host (typically Port 9).
3. Select the port address by scanning the appropriate bar code from *Port Address on page 8-4*.
4. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

> ***NOTE*** The only required configuration is the port address. The IBM system typically controls other digital scanner parameters.

IBM Parameter Defaults

Table 8-1 lists the defaults for IBM host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on page *8-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 8-1 *IBM Host Default Table*

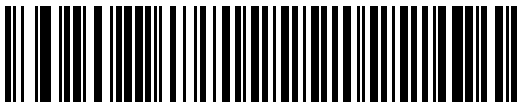
Parameter	Default	Page Number
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters		
Port Address	None Selected	*8-4*
Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	*8-5*
Ignore Beep Directive	Honor	*8-5*
Ignore Configuration Directive	Honor	*8-6*

IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters

Port Address

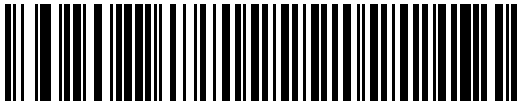
This parameter sets the IBM 468X/469X port used.

NOTE Scanning one of these bar codes enables the RS-485 interface on the digital scanner.



***None Selected**

Hand-Held Scanner Emulation (Port 9B)



Non-IBM Scanner Emulation (Port 5B)

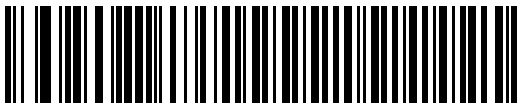
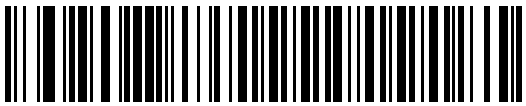


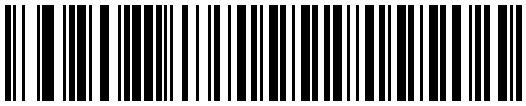
Table Top Scanner Emulation (Port 17)

Convert Unknown to Code 39

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable the conversion of unknown bar code type data to Code 39.



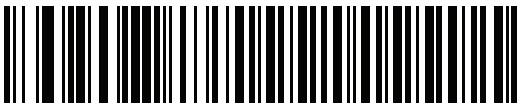
Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39



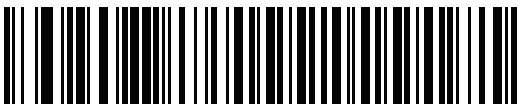
***Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39**

Ignore Beep Directive

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a beep directive made over the IBM RS-485 bus. All directives are still acknowledged to the IBM RS-485 host as if they were processed.



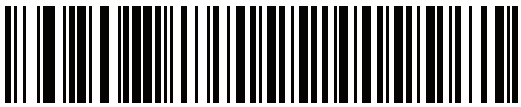
***Honor Beep Directive**



Ignore Beep Directive

Ignore Configuration Directive

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a code type enable/disable directive made over the IBM RS-485 bus. All directives are still acknowledged to the IBM RS-485 host as if they were processed.



***Honor Configuration Directive**

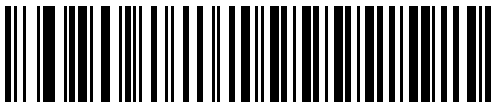
Ignore Configuration Directive

CHAPTER 9 KEYBOARD WEDGE INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up a Keyboard Wedge interface with the digital scanner. With this interface, the digital scanner is connected between the keyboard and host computer, and translates bar code data into keystrokes. The host computer accepts the keystrokes as if they originated from the keyboard. This mode adds bar code reading functionality to a system designed for manual keyboard input. Keyboard keystrokes are simply passed through.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



* Indicates Default — ***IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles** — Feature/Option

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface

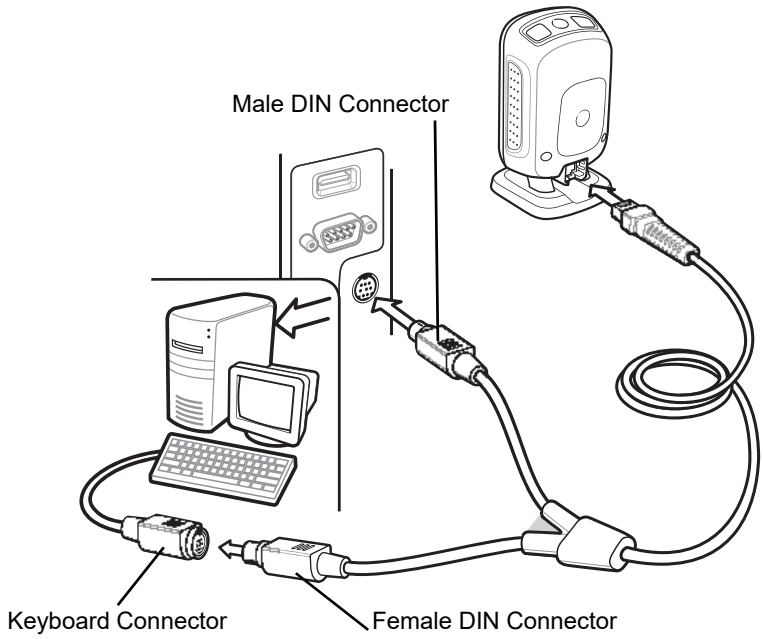


Figure 9-1 *Keyboard Wedge Connection with Y-cable*

To connect the Keyboard Wedge interface Y-cable:

> ***NOTE*** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 9-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Turn off the host and unplug the keyboard connector.
2. Attach the modular connector of the Y-cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
3. Connect the round male DIN host connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard port on the host device.
4. Connect the round female DIN keyboard connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard connector.
5. If needed, attach the optional power supply to the connector in the middle of the Y-cable.
6. Ensure that all connections are secure.
7. Turn on the host system.
8. Select the Keyboard Wedge host type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *Keyboard Wedge Host Types on page 9-4*.
9. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults

Table 9-1 lists the defaults for Keyboard Wedge host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) in the Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters section beginning on page *9-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

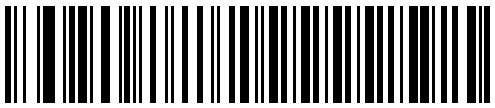
Table 9-1 *Keyboard Wedge Host Default Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters		
Keyboard Wedge Host Type	IBM PC/AT& IBM PC Compatibles	*9-4*
Ignore Unknown Characters	Transmit	*9-5*
Keystroke Delay	No Delay	*9-5*
Intra-Keystroke Delay	Disable	*9-6*
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	Disable	*9-6*
Quick Keypad Emulation	Enable	*9-7*
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	*9-7*
Caps Lock Override	Disable	*9-8*
Convert Wedge Data	No Convert	*9-8*
Function Key Mapping	Disable	*9-9*
FN1 Substitution	Disable	*9-9*
Send and Make Break	Send	*9-10*

Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters

Keyboard Wedge Host Types

Select the Keyboard Wedge host by scanning one of the bar codes below. After selecting the host, see *Appendix B, Country Codes* to select a keyboard type.



***IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles**

IBM AT Notebook

Ignore Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

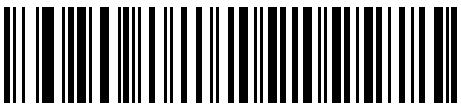
Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.

***Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Transmit)**

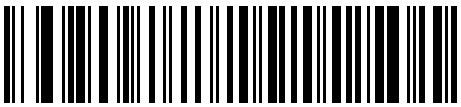
Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

Keystroke Delay

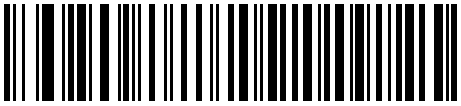
This is the delay in milliseconds between emulated keystrokes. Scan a bar code below to increase the delay when hosts require a slower transmission of data.



***No Delay**



Medium Delay (20 msec)



Long Delay (40 msec)

Intra-Keystroke Delay

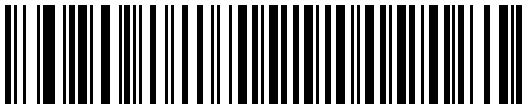
Enable this to insert an additional delay between each emulated key depression and release. This sets the Keystroke Delay parameter to a minimum of 5 msec as well.

Enable

***Disable**

Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation

This allows emulation of most other country keyboard types not listed in *Appendix B, Country Codes* in a Microsoft® operating system environment.



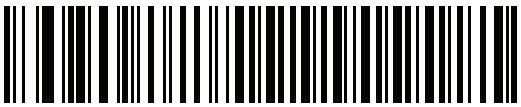
Enable Alternate Numeric Keypad

***Disable Alternate Numeric Keypad**

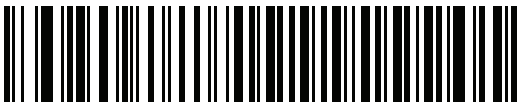
Quick Keypad Emulation

This parameter enables faster keypad emulation where character value sequences are only sent for characters not found on the keyboard.

NOTE This option applies only when *Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation* is enabled.



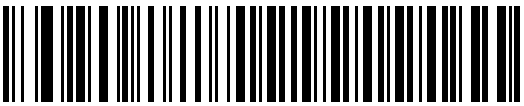
***Enable Quick Keypad Emulation**



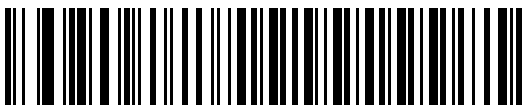
Disable Quick Keypad Emulation

Simulated Caps Lock

Enable this to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** state. Note that this only applies to alpha characters.



Enable Caps Lock On



***Disable Caps Lock On**

Caps Lock Override

Enable this on AT or AT Notebook hosts to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the **Caps Lock** key. Therefore, an ‘A’ in the bar code transmits as an ‘A’ regardless of the setting of the keyboard’s **Caps Lock** key.

Enable Caps Lock Override

***Disable Caps Lock Override**

NOTE If both Simulated Caps Lock and Caps Lock Override are enabled, Caps Lock Override takes precedence.

Convert Wedge Data

Enable this to convert all bar code data to the selected case.

Convert to Upper Case

Convert to Lower Case

***No Convert**

Function Key Mapping

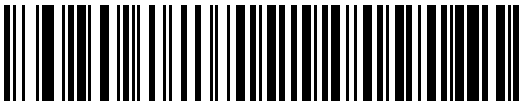
ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as control key sequences (see *Table 9-2 on page 9-12*). Enable this parameter to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.

Enable

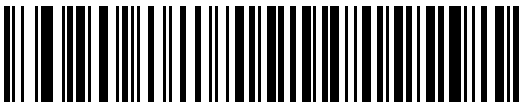
***Disable**

FN1 Substitution

Enable this to replace FN1 characters in an EAN128 bar code with a user-selected keystroke (see *FN1 Substitution on page 9-9*).



Enable



***Disable**

Send Make and Break

Enable this to prevent sending the scan codes for releasing a key.

***Send Make and Break Scan Codes**

Send Make Scan Code Only

NOTE Windows-based systems must use **Send Make and Break Scan Codes**.

Keyboard Maps

Refer to the following keyboard maps for prefix/suffix keystroke parameters. To program the prefix/suffix values, see the bar codes on *page 4-41*.

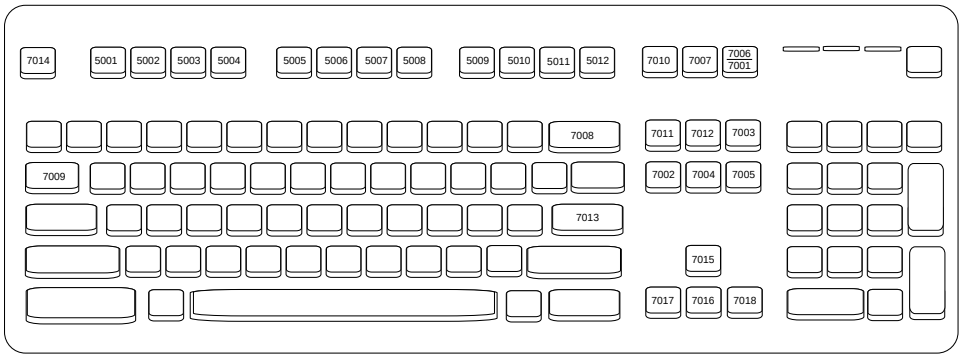


Figure 9-2 *IBM PS2 Type Keyboard*

ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge

NOTE Code 39 Full ASCII interprets the bar code special character ($ + % /) preceding a Code 39 character and assigns an ASCII character value to the pair. For example, if you enable Code 39 Full ASCII and scan **+B**, it transmits as **b**, **%J** as **?**, and **%V** as **@**. Scanning **ABC%I** outputs the keystroke equivalent of **ABC >.**

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W

[1]**The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping on page 9-9. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.**

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [/**ESC**[1]
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping on page 9-9. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping on page 9-9. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	‘
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping on page 9-9. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping on page 9-9. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-3 *Keyboard Wedge ALT Key Character Set*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K

Table 9-3 *Keyboard Wedge ALT Key Character Set (Continued)*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table 9-4 *Keyboard Wedge GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Keys	Keystrokes
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C

Table 9-4 *Keyboard Wedge GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Keys	Keystrokes
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z

Table 9-5 *Keyboard Wedge F Key Character Set*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F1
5002	F2
5003	F3
5004	F4
5005	F5
5006	F6

Table 9-5 *Keyboard Wedge F Key Character Set (Continued)*

F Keys	Keystroke
5007	F7
5008	F8
5009	F9
5010	F10
5011	F11
5012	F12
5013	F13
5014	F14
5015	F15
5016	F16
5017	F17
5018	F18
5019	F19
5020	F20
5021	F21
5022	F22
5023	F23
5024	F24

Table 9-6 *Keyboard Wedge Numeric Keypad Character Set*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4

Table 9-6 *Keyboard Wedge Numeric Keypad Character Set (Continued)*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table 9-7 *Keyboard Wedge Extended Keypad Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

CHAPTER 10 SYMBOLOGIES

Introduction

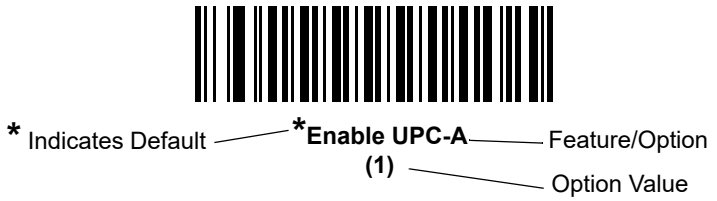
This chapter describes symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features. Before programming, follow the instructions in *Chapter 1, Getting Started*.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the digital scanner powers down.

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

Select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-4*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to transmit bar code data without the UPC-A check digit, simply scan the **Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit** bar code under *Transmit UPC-A Check Digit on page 10-18*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5** require scanning several bar codes. See the individual parameter, such as **Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5**, for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

Symbology Parameter Defaults

Table 10-1 lists the defaults for all symbologies parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 10-1 *Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Disable All Code Types			*10-8*
UPC/EAN			
UPC-A	1	Enable	*10-9*
UPC-E	2	Enable	*10-9*
UPC-E1	12	Disable	*10-10*
EAN-8/JAN 8	4	Enable	*10-10*
EAN-13/JAN 13	3	Enable	*10-11*
Bookland EAN	83	Disable	*10-11*
Bookland ISBN Format	576	ISBN-10	*10-12*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2 and 5 digits)	16	Ignore	*10-14*
User-Programmable Supplementals Supplemental 1: Supplemental 2:	 579 580	N/A	*10-16*
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	80	10	*10-16*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	672	Combined	*10-17*
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone	1289	Disable	*10-18*
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	40	Enable	*10-18*
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	41	Enable	*10-18*
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	42	Enable	*10-19*
UPC-A Preamble	34	System Character	*10-20*
UPC-E Preamble	35	System Character	*10-21*

Table 10-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
UPC-E1 Preamble	36	System Character	*10-22*
Convert UPC-E to A	37	Disable	*10-23*
Convert UPC-E1 to A	38	Disable	*10-23*
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend	39	Disable	*10-24*
UCC Coupon Extended Code	85	Disable	*10-24*
Coupon Report	730	New Coupon Symbols	*10-25*
ISSN EAN	617	Disable	*10-26*
Code 128			
Code 128	8	Enable	*10-27*
Set Length(s) for Code 128	209, 210	Any Length	*10-28*
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)	14	Enable	*10-29*
ISBT 128	84	Enable	*10-29*
ISBT Concatenation	577	Disable	*10-30*
Check ISBT Table	578	Enable	*10-31*
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	223	10	*10-31*
Code 128 Security Level	751	Security Level 1	*10-32*
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone	1208	Disable	*10-33*
Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>	1254	Disable	*10-33*
Code 39			
Code 39	0	Enable	*10-34*
Trioptic Code 39	13	Disable	*10-34*
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	86	Disable	*10-35*
Code 32 Prefix	231	Disable	*10-35*
Set Length(s) for Code 39	18, 19	Length Within Range: 2 to 55	*10-36*
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	48	Disable	*10-37*
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	43	Disable	*10-37*
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	17	Disable	*10-38*
Code 39 Security Level	750	Security Level 1	*10-39*
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone	1209	Disable	*10-40*

Table 10-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Code 39 Buffering	113	Disable	*10-41*
Clear Buffer	N/A	N/A	*10-42*
Transmit Buffer	N/A	N/A	*10-42*
Code 93			
Code 93	9	Disable	*10-43*
Set Length(s) for Code 93	26, 27	Length Within Range: 4 to 55	*10-44*
Code 11			
Code 11	10	Disable	*10-45*
Set Lengths for Code 11	28, 29	Length Within Range: 4 to 55	*10-46*
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	52	Disable	*10-47*
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	47	Disable	*10-48*
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)			
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	6	Enable	*10-49*
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	22, 23	Length within Range: 6 - 55	*10-49*
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	49	Disable	*10-51*
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	44	Disable	*10-51*
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	82	Disable	*10-52*
I 2 of 5 Security Level	1121	Security Level 1	*10-53*
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone	1210	Disable	*10-54*
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)			
Discrete 2 of 5	5	Disable	*10-55*
Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5	20, 21	1 Length: 12	*10-55*
Codabar (NW - 7)			
Codabar	7	Disable	*10-57*
Set Lengths for Codabar	24, 25	Length Within Range: 5 to 55	*10-58*
CLSI Editing	54	Disable	*10-59*
NOTIS Editing	55	Disable	*10-59*
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection	855	Lower Case	*10-60*

Table 10-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
MSI			
MSI	11	Disable	*10-61*
Set Length(s) for MSI	30, 31	Length Within Range: 4 to 55	*10-61*
MSI Check Digits	50	One	*10-63*
Transmit MSI Check Digit	46	Disable	*10-63*
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	51	Mod 10/Mod 10	*10-64*
Chinese 2 of 5			
Chinese 2 of 5	408	Disable	*10-64*
Matrix 2 of 5			
Matrix 2 of 5	618	Disable	*10-65*
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	619, 620	1 Length: 14	*10-66*
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	622	Disable	*10-67*
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	623	Disable	*10-67*
Korean 3 of 5			
Korean 3 of 5	581	Disable	*10-68*
Inverse 1D	586	Regular	*10-69*
Postal Codes			
US Postnet	89	Disable	*10-70*
US Planet	90	Disable	*10-70*
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	95	Enable	*10-71*
UK Postal	91	Disable	*10-71*
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	96	Enable	*10-72*
Japan Postal	290	Disable	*10-72*
Australia Post	291	Disable	*10-73*
Australia Post Format	718	Autodiscriminate	*10-74*
Netherlands KIX Code	326	Disable	*10-75*
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	592	Disable	*10-75*
UPU FICS Postal	611	Disable	*10-76*
Mailmark	1337	Disable	*10-76*

Table 10-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
GS1 DataBar			
GS1 DataBar (GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional)	338	Enable	*10-77*
GS1 DataBar Limited	339	Enable	*10-78*
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level	728	3	*10-79*
GS1 DataBar Expanded (GS1 DataBar Expanded, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked)	340	Enable	*10-80*
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN	397	Disable	*10-80*
Composite			
Composite CC-C	341	Disable	*10-81*
Composite CC-A/B	342	Disable	*10-81*
Composite TLC-39	371	Disable	*10-82*
UPC Composite Mode	344	Never Linked	*10-82*
Composite Beep Mode	398	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	*10-83*
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	427	Disable	*10-83*
2D Symbologies			
PDF417	15	Enable	*10-84*
MicroPDF417	227	Disable	*10-84*
Code 128 Emulation	123	Disable	*10-85*
Data Matrix	292	Enable	*10-86*
Data Matrix Inverse	588	Inverse Autodetect	*10-86*
GS1 Data Matrix	1336	Disable	*10-87*
Maxicode	294	Disable	*10-87*
QR Code	293	Enable	*10-88*
GS1 QR	1343	Disable	*10-88*
MicroQR	573	Enable	*10-89*
Aztec	574	Enable	*10-90*
Aztec Inverse	589	Inverse Autodetect	*10-90*
Han Xin	1167	Disable	*10-91*
Han Xin Inverse	1168	Regular	*10-91*

Table 10-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Symbology-Specific Security Levels			
Redundancy Level	78	1	*10-92*
Security Level (UPC/EAN and Code 93)	77	1	*10-94*
1D Quiet Zone Level	1288	1	*10-95*
Intercharacter Gap Size	381	Normal	*10-96*
Report Version			*10-96*
Macro PDF			
Flush Macro PDF Buffer	N/A	N/A	*10-97*
Abort Macro PDF Entry	N/A	N/A	*10-97*

Disable All Code Types

To disable all symbologies, scan the bar code below. This is useful when enabling only a few code types.

Disable All Code Types

UPC/EAN

Enable/Disable UPC-A

Parameter # 1

To enable or disable UPC-A, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable UPC-A**
(1)

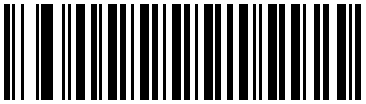
Disable UPC-A
(0)

Enable/Disable UPC-E

Parameter # 2

To enable or disable UPC-E, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable UPC-E**
(1)



Disable UPC-E
(0)

Enable/Disable UPC-E1

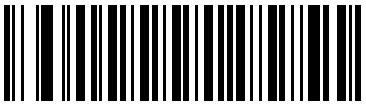
Parameter # 12

UPC-E1 is disabled by default.

To enable or disable UPC-E1, scan the appropriate bar code below.

NOTE UPC-E1 is not a UCC (Uniform Code Council) approved symbology.

Enable UPC-E1
(1)



***Disable UPC-E1**
(0)

Enable/Disable EAN-8/JAN-8

Parameter # 4

To enable or disable EAN-8/JAN-8, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable EAN-8/JAN-8**
(1)

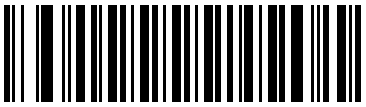
Disable EAN-8/JAN-8
(0)

Enable/Disable EAN-13/JAN-13

Parameter # 3

To enable or disable EAN-13/JAN-13, scan the appropriate bar code below.

*Enable EAN-13/JAN-13
(1)

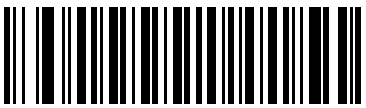


Disable EAN-13/JAN-13
(0)

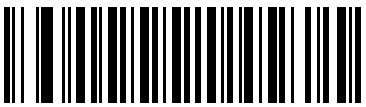
Enable/Disable Bookland EAN

Parameter # 83

To enable or disable Bookland EAN, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Bookland EAN
(1)



*Disable Bookland EAN
(0)

✓ *NOTE* If Bookland EAN is enabled, select a *Bookland ISBN Format on page 10-12*. Also select either Decode UPC/EAN Supplementals, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode in *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 10-13*.

Bookland ISBN Format

Parameter # 576

If Bookland EAN is enabled, select one of the following formats for Bookland data:

- **Bookland ISBN-10** - The digital scanner reports Bookland data starting with 978 in traditional 10-digit format with the special Bookland check digit for backward-compatibility. Data starting with 979 is not considered Bookland in this mode.
- **Bookland ISBN-13** - The digital scanner reports Bookland data (starting with either 978 or 979) as EAN-13 in 13-digit format to meet the 2007 ISBN-13 protocol.

***Bookland ISBN-10**
(0)

Bookland ISBN-13
(1)

✓ ***NOTE*** For Bookland EAN to function properly, ensure Bookland EAN is enabled (see *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 10-11*), then select either Decode UPC/EAN Supplementals, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode in *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 10-13*.

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals

Parameter # 16

Supplementals are bar codes appended according to specific format conventions (e.g., UPC A+2, UPC E+2, EAN 13+2). The following options are available:

- If you select **Ignore UPC/EAN with Supplementals**, and the digital scanner is presented with a UPC/EAN plus supplemental symbol, the scanner decodes UPC/EAN and ignores the supplemental characters.
- If you select **Decode UPC/EAN with Supplementals**, the digital scanner only decodes UPC/EAN symbols with supplemental characters, and ignores symbols without supplementals.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals**, the digital scanner decodes UPC/EAN symbols with supplemental characters immediately. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the digital scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 10-16* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental.
- If you select one of the following **Supplemental Mode** options, the digital scanner immediately transmits EAN-13 bar codes starting with that prefix that have supplemental characters. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the digital scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 10-16* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental. The digital scanner transmits UPC/EAN bar codes that do not have that prefix immediately.
  - **Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode**

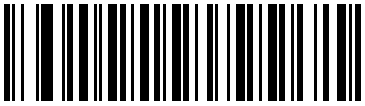
✓ ***NOTE*** If you select 978/979 Supplemental Mode and are scanning Bookland EAN bar codes, see *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 10-11* to enable Bookland EAN, and select a format using *Bookland ISBN Format on page 10-12*.

  - **Enable 977 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 491 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable Smart Supplemental Mode** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously.
  - **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with a 3-digit user-defined prefix. Set this 3-digit prefix using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 10-16*.
  - **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2 -** applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with either of two 3-digit user-defined prefixes. Set the 3-digit prefixes using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 10-16***.**
  - **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or the user-defined prefix set using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 10-16*.
  - **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2 -** applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or one of the two user-defined prefixes set using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 10-16*.

✓ ***NOTE*** To minimize the risk of invalid data transmission, select either to decode or ignore supplemental characters.

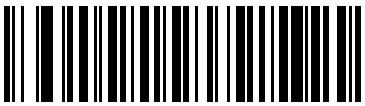
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Only With Supplementals (1)



***Ignore Supplementals (0)**

Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2)



Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode (4)

Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode (5)

Enable 977 Supplemental Mode (7)

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)

Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode
(6)

Enable 491 Supplemental Mode
(8)

Enable Smart Supplemental Mode
(3)

Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1
(9)

Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2
(10)

Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1
(11)

Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2
(12)

User-Programmable Supplementals

Supplemental 1: Parameter # 579

Supplemental 2: Parameter # 580

If you selected a Supplemental User-Programmable option from *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 10-13*, select **User-Programmable Supplemental 1** to set the 3-digit prefix. Then select the 3 digits using the numeric bar codes beginning on *page G-1*. Select **User-Programmable Supplemental 2** to set a second 3-digit prefix. Then select the 3 digits using the numeric bar codes beginning on *page G-1*.

User-Programmable Supplemental 1

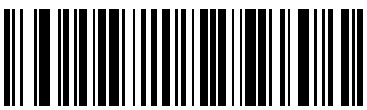
User-Programmable Supplemental 2

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

Parameter # 80

If you selected **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals**, this option adjusts the number of times to decode a symbol without supplementals before transmission. The range is from two to thirty times. Five or above is recommended when decoding a mix of UPC/EAN/JAN symbols with and without supplementals. The default is 10.

Scan the bar code below to set a decode redundancy value. Next, scan two numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.



UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format

Parameter # 672

Select an output format when reporting UPC/EAN/JAN bar codes with Supplementals with *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-40* set to **AIM Code ID Character**:

- **Separate** - transmit UPC/EAN with supplementals with separate AIM IDs but one transmission, i.e.:

  ]E<0 or 4><data>]E<1 or 2>[supplemental data]

- **Combined** – transmit UPC/EAN with supplementals with one AIM ID and one transmission, i.e.:

  ]E3<data+supplemental data>

- **Separate Transmissions** - transmit UPC/EAN with supplementals with separate AIM IDs and separate transmissions, i.e.:

  ]E<0 or 4><data>
  ]E<1 or 2>[supplemental data]

Separate
(0)

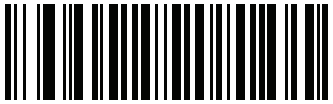
***Combined**
(1)

Separate Transmissions
(2)

UPC Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1289

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding UPC bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 10-95*.



Enable UPC Reduced Quiet Zone
(1)

***Disable UPC Reduced Quiet Zone**
(0)

Transmit UPC-A Check Digit

Parameter # 40

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-A check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

***Transmit UPC-A Check Digit**
(1)

Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit
(0)

Transmit UPC-E Check Digit

Parameter # 41

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

***Transmit UPC-E Check Digit**
(1)

Do Not Transmit UPC-E Check Digit
(0)

Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit

Parameter # 42

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E1 check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

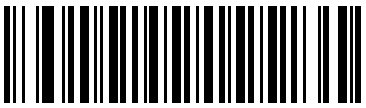
***Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit**
(1)

Do Not Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit
(0)

UPC-A Preamble

Parameter # 34

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-A preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.



No Preamble (<DATA>)
(0)

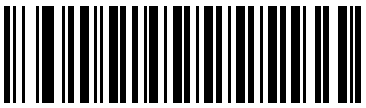
***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(1)

System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(2)

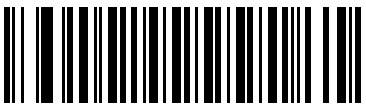
UPC-E Preamble

Parameter # 35

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-E preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.



No Preamble (<DATA>)
(0)



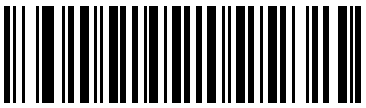
***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(1)

System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(2)

UPC-E1 Preamble

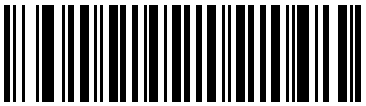
Parameter # 36

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-E1 preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.



No Preamble (<DATA>)
(0)

***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(1)



System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(2)

Convert UPC-E to UPC-A

Parameter # 37

Enable this to convert UPC-E (zero suppressed) decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E decoded data as UPC-E data, without conversion.

Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Disable)**
(0)

Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A

Parameter # 38

Enable this to convert UPC-E1 decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E1 decoded data as UPC-E1 data, without conversion.

Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Disable)**
(0)

EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend

Parameter # 39

Enable this parameter to add five leading zeros to decoded EAN-8 symbols to make them compatible in format to EAN-13 symbols.

Disable this to transmit EAN-8 symbols as is.

Enable EAN/JAN Zero Extend
(1)

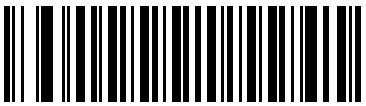
***Disable EAN/JAN Zero Extend**
(0)

UCC Coupon Extended Code

Parameter # 85

Enable this parameter to decode UPC-A bar codes starting with digit '5', EAN-13 bar codes starting with digit '99', and UPC-A/GS1-128 Coupon Codes. UPCA, EAN-13, and GS1-128 must be enabled to scan all types of Coupon Codes.

Enable UCC Coupon Extended Code
(1)



***Disable UCC Coupon Extended Code**
(0)

✓ ***NOTE*** See *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 10-16* to control autodiscrimination of the GS1-128 (right half) of a coupon code.

Coupon Report

Parameter # 730

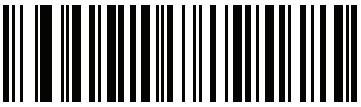
Traditional coupon symbols (old coupon symbols) are composed of two bar codes: UPC/EAN and Code128. A new coupon symbol is composed of a single Databar Expanded bar code. The new coupon format offers more options for purchase values (up to $999.99) and supports complex discount offers such as a second purchase requirement.

An interim coupon symbol also exists that contains both types of bar codes: UPC/EAN and Databar Expanded. This format accommodates both retailers that do not recognize or use the additional information included in the new coupon symbol, as well as those who can process new coupon symbols.

Scan a bar code below to select one of the following options for decoding coupon symbols:

- **Old Coupon Symbols** - Scanning an old coupon symbol reports both UPC and Code 128, scanning an interim coupon symbol reports UPC, and scanning a new coupon symbol reports nothing (no decode).
- **New Coupon Symbols** - Scanning an old coupon symbol reports either UPC or Code 128, and scanning an interim coupon symbol or a new coupon symbol reports Databar Expanded.
- **Both Coupon Formats** - Scanning an old coupon symbol reports both UPC and Code 128, and scanning an interim coupon symbol or a new coupon symbol reports Databar Expanded.

Old Coupon Symbols
(0)



***New Coupon Symbols**
(1)

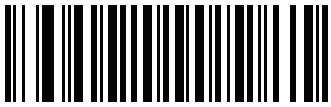
Both Coupon Formats
(2)

ISSN EAN

Parameter # 617

To enable or disable ISSN EAN, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable ISSN EAN
(1)



***Disable ISSN EAN**
(0)

Code 128

Enable/Disable Code 128

Parameter # 8

To enable or disable Code 128, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Code 128**
(1)

Disable Code 128
(0)

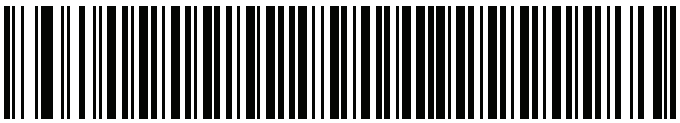
Set Lengths for Code 128

Parameter # L1 = 209, L2 = 210

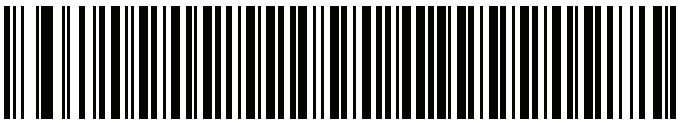
The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 128 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is **Any Length.**

✓ *NOTE* When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

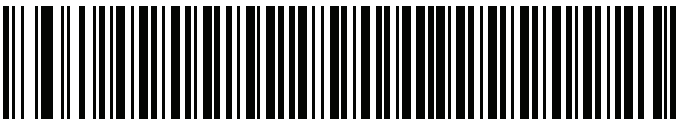
- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 128 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 128 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 128 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Code 128 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 128 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Code 128 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 128 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.



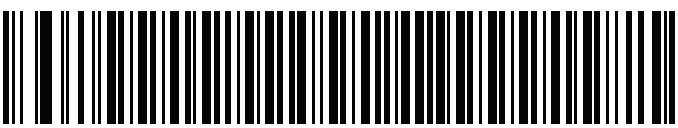
Code 128 - One Discrete Length



Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths



Code 128 - Length Within Range



***Code 128 - Any Length**

Enable/Disable GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)

Parameter # 14

To enable or disable GS1-128, scan the appropriate bar code below.

*Enable GS1-128
(1)

Disable GS1-128
(0)

Enable/Disable ISBT 128

Parameter # 84

ISBT 128 is a variant of Code 128 used in the blood bank industry. Scan a bar code below to enable or disable ISBT 128. If necessary, the host must perform concatenation of the ISBT data.

*Enable ISBT 128
(1)

Disable ISBT 128
(0)

ISBT Concatenation

Parameter # 577

Select an option for concatenating pairs of ISBT code types:

- If you select **Disable ISBT Concatenation**, the digital scanner does not concatenate pairs of ISBT codes it encounters.
- If you select **Enable ISBT Concatenation**, there must be two ISBT codes in order for the digital scanner to decode and perform concatenation. The digital scanner does not decode single ISBT symbols.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation**, the digital scanner decodes and concatenates pairs of ISBT codes immediately. If only a single ISBT symbol is present, the digital scanner must decode the symbol the number of times set via *ISBT Concatenation Redundancy on page 10-31* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no additional ISBT symbol.

***Disable ISBT Concatenation**
(0)

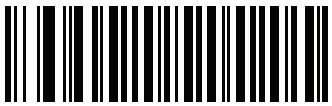
Enable ISBT Concatenation
(1)

Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation
(2)

Check ISBT Table

Parameter # 578

The ISBT specification includes a table that lists several types of ISBT bar codes that are commonly used in pairs. If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Enable**, enable **Check ISBT Table** to concatenate only those pairs found in this table. Other types of ISBT codes are not concatenated.



***Enable Check ISBT Table**
(1)

Disable Check ISBT Table
(0)

ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

Parameter # 223

If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Autodiscriminate,** use this parameter to set the number of times the digital scanner must decode an ISBT symbol before determining that there is no additional symbol.

Scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* to set a value between 2 and 20. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*. The default is 10.

ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

Code 128 Security Level

Parameter # 751

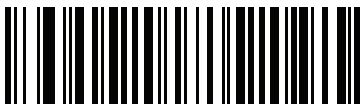
Code 128 bar codes are vulnerable to misdecodes, particularly when Code 128 Lengths is set to **Any Length**. The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for Code 128 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **Code 128 Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **Code 128 Security Level 1:** A bar code must be successfully read twice, and satisfy certain safety requirements before being decoded. This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Code 128 Security Level 2:** Select this option with greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Code 128Security Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level to apply the highest safety requirements. A bar code must be successfully read three times before being decoded.

> ✓ ***NOTE*** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

Code 128Security Level 0 (0)

***Code 128 Security Level 1 (1)**



Code 128 Security Level 2 (2)

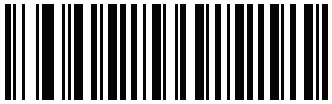
Code 128 Security Level 3 (3)

Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1208

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding Code 128 bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 10-95*.

Enable Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone
(1)



***Disable Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone**
(0)

Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>

Parameter # 1254

This feature applies to Code 128 bar codes with an embedded <FNC4> character. Enable this to strip the <FNC4> character from the decode data. The remaining characters are sent to the host unchanged. When disabled, the <FNC4> character is processed normally as per Code 128 standard.

Enable Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>
(1)

***Disable Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>**
(0)

Code 39

Enable/Disable Code 39

Parameter # 0

To enable or disable Code 39, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Code 39**
(1)

Disable Code 39
(0)

Enable/Disable Trioptic Code 39

Parameter # 13

Trioptic Code 39 is a variant of Code 39 used in the marking of computer tape cartridges. Trioptic Code 39 symbols always contain six characters. To enable or disable Trioptic Code 39, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Trioptic Code 39
(1)

***Disable Trioptic Code 39**
(0)

NOTE You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

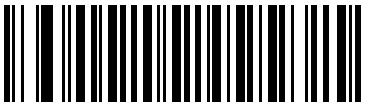
Convert Code 39 to Code 32

Parameter # 86

Code 32 is a variant of Code 39 used by the Italian pharmaceutical industry. Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable converting Code 39 to Code 32.

NOTE Code 39 must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Enable Convert Code 39 to Code 32
(1)



***Disable Convert Code 39 to Code 32**
(0)

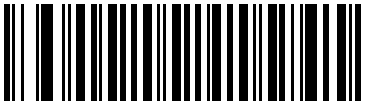
Code 32 Prefix

Parameter # 231

Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable adding the prefix character “A” to all Code 32 bar codes.

NOTE Convert Code 39 to Code 32 must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Enable Code 32 Prefix
(1)



***Disable Code 32 Prefix**
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 39

Parameter # L1 = 18, L2 = 19

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 39 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. If Code 39 Full ASCII is enabled, **Length Within a Range** or **Any Length** are the preferred options. The default option is **Length Within Range**, 2 to 55.

✓ *NOTE* When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 39 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 39 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 39 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode a Code 39 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 39 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 39 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 39 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Code 39 - One Discrete Length

Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths

***Code 39 - Length Within Range**
(Default: 2 to 55)

Code 39 - Any Length

Code 39 Check Digit Verification

Parameter # 48

Enable this feature to check the integrity of all Code 39 symbols to verify that the data complies with specified check digit algorithm. Only Code 39 symbols which include a modulo 43 check digit are decoded. Enable this feature if the Code 39 symbols contain a Modulo 43 check digit.

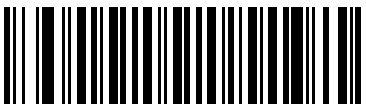
Enable Code 39 Check Digit
(1)

***Disable Code 39 Check Digit**
(0)

Transmit Code 39 Check Digit

Parameter # 43

Scan a bar code below to transmit Code 39 data with or without the check digit.



Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Disable)**
(0)

NOTE Code 39 Check Digit Verification must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion

Parameter # 17

Code 39 Full ASCII is a variant of Code 39 which pairs characters to encode the full ASCII character set. To enable or disable Code 39 Full ASCII, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Code 39 Full ASCII
(1)

***Disable Code 39 Full ASCII**
(0)

NOTE You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

Code 39 Full ASCII to Full ASCII Correlation is host-dependent, and is therefore described in the ASCII Character Set Table for the appropriate interface. See the *ASCII Character Set for USB on page 6-19* or the *ASCII Character Set for RS-232 on page 7-19*.

Code 39 Security Level

Parameter # 750

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for Code 39 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **Code 39 Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **Code 39 Security Level 1:** This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Code 39 Security Level 2:** Select this option with greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Code 39 Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level to apply the highest safety requirements.

✓ *NOTE* Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

Code 39 Security Level 0
(0)

***Code 39 Security Level 1**
(1)

Code 39 Security Level 2
(2)

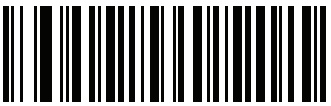
Code 39 Security Level 3
(3)

Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1209

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding Code 39 bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 10-95*.

Enable Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone (1)



***Disable Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone (0)**

Code 39 Buffering

Parameter # 113

This feature allows the digital scanner to accumulate data from multiple Code 39 symbols.

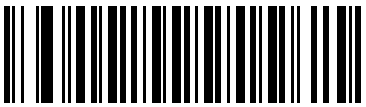
Enabling **Code 39 Buffering** temporarily buffers all Code 39 symbols having a leading space as a first character for later transmission. The leading space is not buffered.

Decoding a Code 39 symbol with no leading space transmits in sequence all buffered data in a first-in first-out format, plus the “triggering” symbol. See the following pages for further details.

Select **Disable Code 39 Buffering** to transmit all decoded Code 39 symbols immediately without storing them in the buffer.

This feature affects Code 39 only. If enabling **Code 39 Buffering**, we recommend configuring the digital scanner to decode the Code 39 symbology only.

Enable Code 39 Buffering
(1)



***Disable Code 39 Buffering**
(0)

While there is data in the transmission buffer, you cannot select **Disable Code 39 Buffering**. The buffer holds 200 bytes of information.

To disable **Code 39 Buffering** when there is data in the transmission buffer, first force the buffer transmission (see *Transmit Buffer on page 10-42*) or clear the buffer.

Buffer Data

To buffer data, enable **Code 39 Buffering** and scan a Code 39 symbol with a space immediately following the start pattern.

- Unless the data overflows the transmission buffer, the digital scanner issues a low/high beep to indicate successful decode and buffering. For overflow conditions, see *Overfilling Transmission Buffer on page 10-42*.
- The digital scanner adds the decoded data excluding the leading space to the transmission buffer.
- No transmission occurs.

Clear Transmission Buffer

To clear the transmission buffer, scan the **Clear Buffer** bar code, which contains only a start character, a dash (minus), and a stop character.

- The digital scanner issues a short high/low/high beep.
- The digital scanner erases the transmission buffer.
- No transmission occurs.

Clear Buffer

NOTE Because the **Clear Buffer** bar code contains only the dash (minus) character, use *Set Lengths for Code 39* to include length 1 in order to scan this command.

Transmit Buffer

There are two methods to transmit the Code 39 buffer.

1. Scan the **Transmit Buffer** bar code, which includes only a start character, a plus (+), and a stop character.
2. The digital scanner transmits and clears the buffer.
   - The digital scanner issues a low/high beep.

Transmit Buffer

3. Scan a Code 39 bar code with a leading character other than a space.
   - The digital scanner appends new decode data to buffered data.
   - The digital scanner transmits and clears the buffer.
   - The digital scanner signals that it transmitted the buffer with a low/high beep.
   - The digital scanner transmits and clears the buffer.

NOTE Because the **Transmit Buffer** bar code contains only a plus (+) character, use *Set Lengths for Code 39* to include length 1 in order to scan this command

Overfilling Transmission Buffer

The Code 39 buffer holds 200 characters. If the symbol just read overflows the transmission buffer:

- The digital scanner indicates that it rejected the symbol by issuing three long, high beeps.
- No transmission occurs. The data in the buffer is not affected.

Attempt to Transmit an Empty Buffer

If you scan the **Transmit Buffer** symbol and the Code 39 buffer is empty:

- A short low/high/low beep signals that the buffer is empty.
- No transmission occurs.
- The buffer remains empty.

Code 93

Enable/Disable Code 93

Parameter # 9

To enable or disable Code 93, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Code 93
(1)

***Disable Code 93**
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 93

Parameter # L1 = 26, L2 = 27

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 93 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.The default option is **Length Within Range**, 4 to 55.

✓ ***NOTE*** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 93 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 93 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 93 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode a Code 93 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 93 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 93 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 93 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Code 93 - One Discrete Length

Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths

***Code 93 - Length Within Range**
(Default: 4 to 55)

Code 93 - Any Length

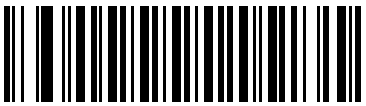
Code 11

Code 11

Parameter # 10

To enable or disable Code 11, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Code 11
(1)



***Disable Code 11**
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 11

Parameter # L1 = 28, L2 = 29

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 11 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default option is **Length Within Range**, 4 to 55.

✓ ***NOTE*** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 11 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 11 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2.*
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 11 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Code 11 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 11 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 11 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 11 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Code 11 - One Discrete Length

Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths

***Code 11 - Length Within Range**
(Default: 4 to 55)

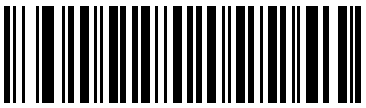
Code 11 - Any Length

Code 11 Check Digit Verification

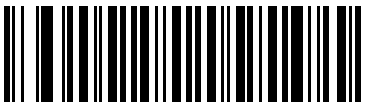
Parameter # 52

This feature allows the digital scanner to check the integrity of all Code 11 symbols to verify that the data complies with the specified check digit algorithm. This selects the check digit mechanism for the decoded Code 11 bar code. The options are to check for one check digit, check for two check digits, or disable the feature.

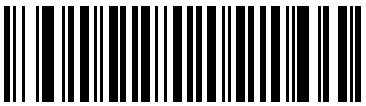
To enable this feature, scan the bar code below corresponding to the number of check digits encoded in the Code 11 symbols.



***Disable**
(0)



One Check Digit
(1)

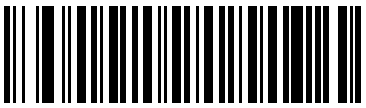


Two Check Digits
(2)

Transmit Code 11 Check Digits

Parameter # 47

This feature selects whether or not to transmit the Code 11 check digit(s).



Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Enable) (1)

***Do Not Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Disable) (0)**

✓ ***NOTE*** Code 11 Check Digit Verification must be enabled for this parameter to function.

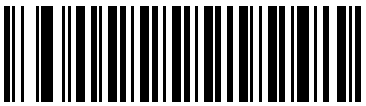
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)

Enable/Disable Interleaved 2 of 5

Parameter # 6

To enable or disable Interleaved 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below, and select an Interleaved 2 of 5 length from the following pages.

***Enable Interleaved 2 of 5 (1)**



Disable Interleaved 2 of 5 (0)

Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 22, L2 = 23

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for I 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default option is **Length Within Range**, 6 to 55.

NOTE When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode I 2 of 5 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

NOTE Due to the construction of the I 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths) for I 2 of 5 applications.

Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 (continued)

I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length

I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

*I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range
(Default: 6 to 55)

I 2 of 5 - Any Length

I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification

Parameter # 49

Enable this feature to check the integrity of all I 2 of 5 symbols to verify the data complies with either the specified Uniform Symbology Specification (USS), or the Optical Product Code Council (OPCC) check digit algorithm.

***Disable**
(0)

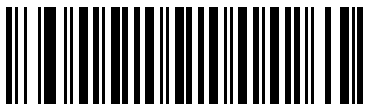
USS Check Digit
(1)

OPCC Check Digit
(2)

Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 44

Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit I 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Enable)
(1)

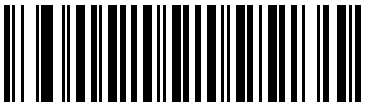
***Do Not Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Disable)**
(0)

Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13

Parameter # 82

Enable this parameter to convert 14-character I 2 of 5 codes to EAN-13, and transmit to the host as EAN-13. To accomplish this, the I 2 of 5 code must be enabled, and the code must have a leading zero and a valid EAN-13 check digit.

Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Enable) (1)



***Do Not Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Disable) (0)**

I 2 of 5 Security Level

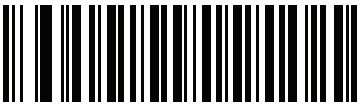
Parameter # 1121

Interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes are vulnerable to misdecodes, particularly when I 2 of 5 Lengths is set to **Any Length**. The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for Interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 1:** A bar code must be successfully read twice, and satisfy certain safety requirements before being decoded. This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 2:** Select this option with greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level. The highest safety requirements are applied. A bar code must be successfully read three times before being decoded.

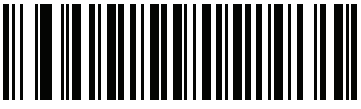
> ✓ ***NOTE*** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

I 2 of 5 Security Level 0
(0)



***I 2 of 5 Security Level 1**
(1)

I 2 of 5 Security Level 2
(2)

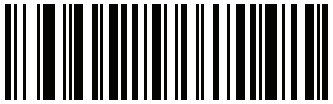


I 2 of 5 Security Level 3
(3)

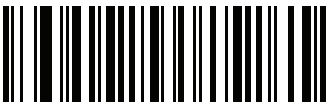
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1210

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding I 2 of 5 bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 10-95*.



Enable I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone (1)



***Disable I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone (0)**

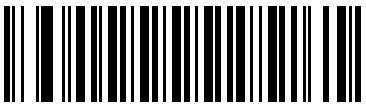
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)

Enable/Disable Discrete 2 of 5

Parameter # 5

To enable or disable Discrete 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Discrete 2 of 5
(1)



***Disable Discrete 2 of 5**
(0)

Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 20, L2 = 21

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for D 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default option is **One Discrete Length**: 12.

NOTE When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode a D 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 (continued)

NOTE Due to the construction of the D 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths**) for D 2 of 5 applications.

***D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length (Default: 12)**

D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range

D 2 of 5 - Any Length

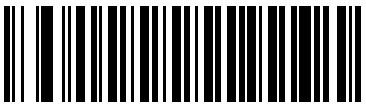
Codabar (NW - 7)

Enable/Disable Codabar

Parameter # 7

To enable or disable Codabar, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Codabar
(1)



***Disable Codabar**
(0)

Set Lengths for Codabar

Parameter # L1 = 24, L2 = 25

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Codabar to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default option is **Length Within Range**, 5 to 55.

✓ ***NOTE*** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Codabar symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Codabar symbols with 14 characters, scan **Codabar - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2.*
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Codabar symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Codabar symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Codabar symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Codabar symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Codabar - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode Codabar symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Codabar - One Discrete Length

Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths

***Codabar - Length Within Range**
(Default: 5 to 55)

Codabar - Any Length

CLSI Editing

Parameter # 54

Enable this parameter to strip the start and stop characters and insert a space after the first, fifth, and tenth characters of a 14-character Codabar symbol. Enable this feature if the host system requires this data format.

NOTE Symbol length does not include start and stop characters.

Enable CLSI Editing
(1)

***Disable CLSI Editing**
(0)

NOTIS Editing

Parameter # 55

Enable this parameter to strip the start and stop characters from a decoded Codabar symbol. Enable this feature if the host system requires this data format.

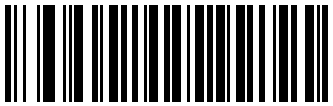
Enable NOTIS Editing
(1)

***Disable NOTIS Editing**
(0)

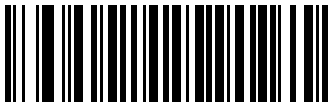
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection

Parameter # 855

Select whether to detect upper case or lower case Codabar start/stop characters.



Upper Case
(0)



***Lower Case**
(1)

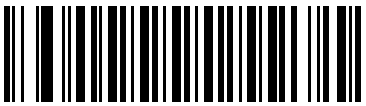
MSI

Enable/Disable MSI

Parameter # 11

To enable or disable MSI, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable MSI
(1)



***Disable MSI**
(0)

Set Lengths for MSI

Parameter # L1 = 30, L2 = 31

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for MSI to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default option is **Length Within Range**, 4 to 55.

NOTE When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only MSI symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only MSI symbols with 14 characters, scan **MSI - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only MSI symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only MSI symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **MSI - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode MSI symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode MSI symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **MSI - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode MSI symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for MSI (continued)

NOTE Due to the construction of the MSI symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**MSI - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths**) for MSI applications.

MSI - One Discrete Length

MSI - Two Discrete Lengths

***MSI - Length Within Range**
(Default: 4 to 55)

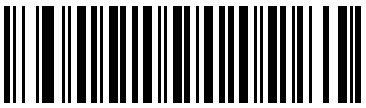
MSI - Any Length

MSI Check Digits

Parameter # 50

With MSI symbols, one check digit is mandatory and always verified by the reader. The second check digit is optional. If the MSI codes include two check digits, scan the **Two MSI Check Digits** bar code to enable verification of the second check digit.

See *MSI Check Digit Algorithm on page 10-64* for the selection of second digit algorithms.



***One MSI Check Digit**
(0)

Two MSI Check Digits
(1)

Transmit MSI Check Digit(s)

Parameter # 46

Scan a bar code below to transmit MSI data with or without the check digit.

Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Enable)
(1

***Do Not Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Disable)**
(0)

MSI Check Digit Algorithm

Parameter # 51

Two algorithms are possible for the verification of the second MSI check digit. Select the bar code below corresponding to the algorithm used to encode the check digit.

MOD 11/MOD 10
(0)

***MOD 10/MOD 10**
(1)

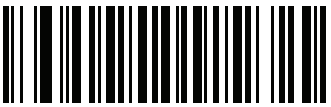
Chinese 2 of 5

Enable/Disable Chinese 2 of 5

Parameter # 408

To enable or disable Chinese 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Chinese 2 of 5
(1)



***Disable Chinese 2 of 5**
(0)

Matrix 2 of 5

Enable/Disable Matrix 2 of 5

Parameter # 618

To enable or disable Matrix 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Matrix 2 of 5
(1)

***Disable Matrix 2 of 5**
(0)

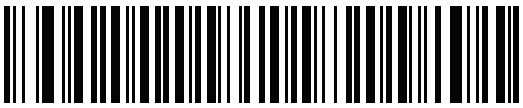
Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 619, L2 = 620

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default option is **One Discrete Length:** 14.

✓ ***NOTE*** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

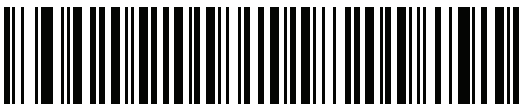
- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Decode a Matrix 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0**, **4**, **1, 2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.



***Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**
(Default: 14)

Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range



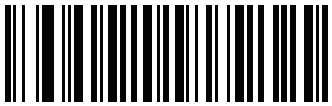
Matrix 2 of 5 - Any Length

Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 622

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the Matrix 2 of 5 check digit.

Enable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit
(1)

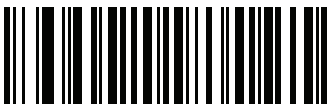


***Disable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit**
(0)

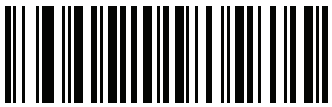
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 623

Scan a bar code below to transmit Matrix 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit
(1)



***Do Not Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit**
(0)

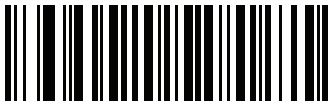
Korean 3 of 5

Enable/Disable Korean 3 of 5

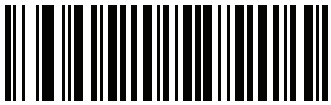
Parameter # 581

To enable or disable Korean 3 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

NOTE The length for Korean 3 of 5 is fixed at 6.



Enable Korean 3 of 5
(1)



***Disable Korean 3 of 5**
(0)

Inverse 1D

Parameter # 586

This parameter sets the 1D inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse 1D bar codes.

***Regular**
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

Inverse Autodetect
(2)

Postal Codes

US Postnet

Parameter # 89

To enable or disable US Postnet, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable US Postnet
(1)

***Disable US Postnet**
(0)

US Planet

Parameter # 90

To enable or disable US Planet, scan the appropriate bar code below.

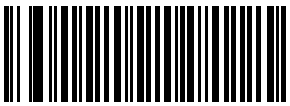
Enable US Planet
(1)

***Disable US Planet**
(0)

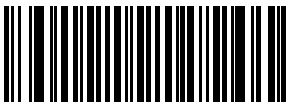
Transmit US Postal Check Digit

Parameter # 95

Select whether to transmit US Postal data, which includes both US Postnet and US Planet, with or without the check digit.



***Transmit US Postal Check Digit**
(1)



Do Not Transmit US Postal Check Digit
(0)

UK Postal

Parameter # 91

To enable or disable UK Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable UK Postal
(1)

***Disable UK Postal**
(0)

Transmit UK Postal Check Digit

Parameter # 96

Select whether to transmit UK Postal data with or without the check digit.

***Transmit UK Postal Check Digit (1)**

Do Not Transmit UK Postal Check Digit (0)

Japan Postal

Parameter # 290

To enable or disable Japan Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Japan Postal (1)

***Disable Japan Postal (0)**

Australia Post

Parameter # 291

To enable or disable Australia Post, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Australia Post
(1)

***Disable Australia Post**
(0)

Australia Post Format

Parameter # 718

To select one of the following formats for Australia Post, scan the appropriate bar code below:

- **Autodiscriminate** (or Smart mode) - Attempt to decode the Customer Information Field using the N and C Encoding Tables.

✓ *NOTE* This option increases the risk of misdecodes because the encoded data format does not specify the Encoding Table used for encoding.

- **Raw Format** - Output raw bar patterns as a series of numbers 0 through 3.
- **Alphanumeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the C Encoding Table.
- **Numeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the N Encoding Table.

For more information on Australia Post Encoding Tables, refer to the *Australia Post Customer Barcoding Technical Specifications* available at http://www.auspost.com.au.

***Autodiscriminate**
(0)

Raw Format
(1)

Alphanumeric Encoding
(2)

Numeric Encoding
(3)

Netherlands KIX Code

Parameter # 326

To enable or disable Netherlands KIX Code, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Netherlands KIX Code
(1)

***Disable Netherlands KIX Code**
(0)

USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail

Parameter # 592

To enable or disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail
(1)

***Disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail**
(0)

UPU FICS Postal

Parameter # 611

To enable or disable UPU FICS Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

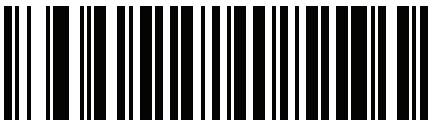
Enable UPU FICS Postal
(1)

***Disable UPU FICS Postal**
(0)

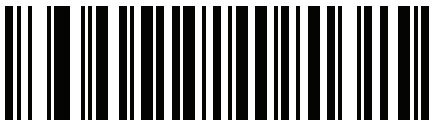
Mailmark

Parameter # 1337

To enable or disable Mailmark, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Disable Mailmark**
(0)



Enable Mailmark
(1)

GS1 DataBar

GS1 DataBar types are:

- GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional
- GS1 DataBar Truncated
- GS1 DataBar Stacked
- GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional
- GS1 DataBar Limited
- GS1 DataBar Expanded
- GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked

Scan the appropriate bar codes to enable or disable each type of GS1 DataBar.

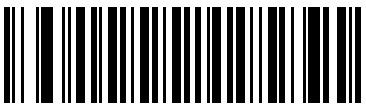
GS1 DataBar

Parameter # 338

Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable the following code types:

- GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional
- GS1 DataBar Truncated
- GS1 DataBar Stacked
- GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional,

***Enable GS1 DataBar (1)**



Disable GS1 DataBar (0)

GS1 DataBar Limited

Parameter # 339

*Enable GS1 DataBar Limited
(1)

Disable GS1 DataBar Limited
(0)

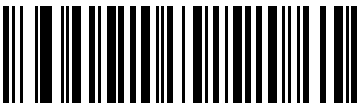
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level

Parameter # 728

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for GS1 DataBar Limited bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security may result in reduced aggressiveness in scanning, so only choose the level of security necessary.

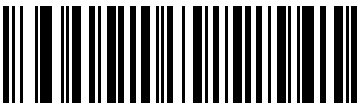
- Level 1 – No clear margin required. This complies with the original GS1 standard, yet might result in erroneous[1] decoding of the DataBar Limited bar code when scanning some UPC symbols that start with the digits “9” and “7”.
- Level 2 – Automatic risk detection. This level of security may result in erroneous decoding of DataBar Limited bar codes when scanning some UPC symbols. If a misdecode is detected, the scanner operates in Level 3 or Level 1.
- Level 3 – Security level reflects newly proposed GS1 standard that requires a 5X trailing clear margin.
- Level 4 – Security level extends beyond the standard required by GS1. This level of security requires a 5X leading and trailing clear margin.

Security Level 1
(1)



Security Level 2
(2)

***Security Level 3**
(3)



Security Level 4
(4)

1.May result in erroneous decoding due to Databar Limited and UPC symbologies.

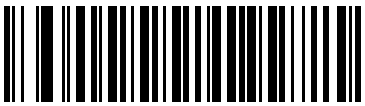
GS1 DataBar Expanded

Parameter # 340

Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable the following code types:

- GS1 DataBar Expanded
- GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked.

***Enable GS1 DataBar Expanded**
(1)



Disable GS1 DataBar Expanded
(0)

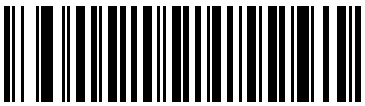
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN

Parameter # 397

This parameter only applies to GS1 DataBar and GS1 DataBar Limited symbols not decoded as part of a Composite symbol. Enable this to strip the leading '010' from DataBar and DataBar Limited symbols encoding a single zero as the first digit, and report the bar code as EAN-13.

For bar codes beginning with two or more zeros but not six zeros, this parameter strips the leading '0100' and reports the bar code as UPC-A. The UPC-A Preamble parameter that transmits the system character and country code applies to converted bar codes. Note that neither the system character nor the check digit can be stripped.

Enable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN
(1)



***Disable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN**
(0)

Composite

Composite CC-C

Parameter # 341

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-C.

Enable CC-C
(1)

***Disable CC-C**
(0)

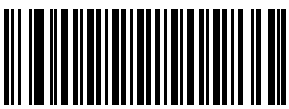
Composite CC-A/B

Parameter # 342

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-A/B.

✓ ***NOTE*** If you enable this code type, also see *UPC Composite Mode on page 10-82*.

Enable CC-A/B
(1)

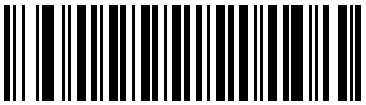


***Disable CC-A/B**
(0)

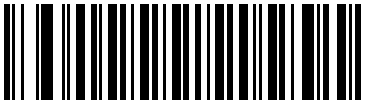
Composite TLC-39

Parameter # 371

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type TLC-39.



Enable TLC39
(1)



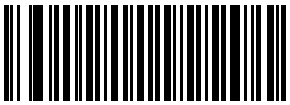
***Disable TLC39**
(0)

UPC Composite Mode

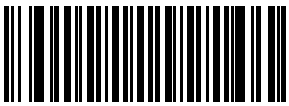
Parameter # 344

If you enable *Composite CC-A/B on page 10-81*, select an option for linking UPC symbols with a 2D symbol during transmission as if they were one symbol:

- Select **UPC Never Linked** to transmit UPC bar codes regardless of whether a 2D symbol is detected.
- Select **UPC Always Linked** to transmit UPC bar codes and the 2D portion. If 2D is not present, the UPC bar code does not transmit.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate UPC Composites**, the digital scanner determines if there is a 2D portion, then transmits the UPC, as well as the 2D portion if present.



***UPC Never Linked**
(0)



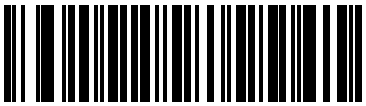
UPC Always Linked
(1)

Autodiscriminate UPC Composites
(2)

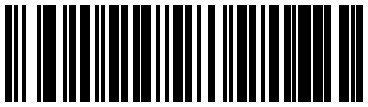
Composite Beep Mode

Parameter # 398

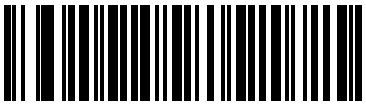
To select the number of decode beeps when a composite bar code is decoded, scan the appropriate bar code.



Single Beep After Both are Decoded
(0)



***Beep as Each Code Type is Decoded**
(1)



Double Beep After Both are Decoded
(2)

GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes

Parameter # 427

Select whether to enable or disable this mode.

Enable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes
(1)

***Disable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes**
(0)

2D Symbologies

Enable/Disable PDF417

Parameter # 15

To enable or disable PDF417, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable PDF417**
(1)

Disable PDF417
(0)

Enable/Disable MicroPDF417

Parameter # 227

To enable or disable MicroPDF417, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable MicroPDF417
(1)

***Disable MicroPDF417**
(0)

Code 128 Emulation

Parameter # 123

Enable this parameter to transmit data from certain MicroPDF417 symbols as Code 128. *AIM Code ID Character (1) on page 4-40* must be enabled for this parameter to work.

Enable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

]C1	if the first codeword is 903-905
]C2	if the first codeword is 908 or 909
]C0	if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Disable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

]L3	if the first codeword is 903-905
]L4	if the first codeword is 908 or 909
]L5	if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Code 128 Emulation.

NOTE Linked MicroPDF codewords 906, 907, 912, 914, and 915 are not supported. Use GS1 Composites instead.

Enable Code 128 Emulation (1)

***Disable Code 128 Emulation (0)**

Data Matrix

Parameter # 292

To enable or disable Data Matrix, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Data Matrix**
(1)

Disable Data Matrix
(0)

Data Matrix Inverse

Parameter # 588

This parameter sets the Data Matrix inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse Data Matrix bar codes.

Regular
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

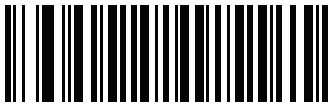
***Inverse Autodetect**
(2)

GS1 Data Matrix

Parameter # 1336

To enable or disable GS1 Data Matrix, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable GS1 Data Matrix
(1)



***Disable GS1 Data Matrix**
(0)

Maxicode

Parameter # 294

To enable or disable Maxicode, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Maxicode
(1)

***Disable Maxicode**
(0)

QR Code

Parameter # 293

To enable or disable QR Code, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable QR Code**
(1)

Disable QR Code
(0)

GS1 QR

Parameter # 1343

To enable or disable GS1 QR, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable GS1 QR
(1)

***Disable GS1 QR**
(0)

MicroQR

Parameter # 573

To enable or disable MicroQR, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable MicroQR**
(1)

Disable MicroQR
(0)

Aztec

Parameter # 574

To enable or disable Aztec, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Aztec**
(1)

Disable Aztec
(0)

Aztec Inverse

Parameter # 589

This parameter sets the Aztec inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse Aztec bar codes.

Regular
(0)

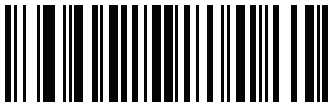
Inverse Only
(1)

***Inverse Autodetect**
(2)

Han Xin

Parameter # 1167

To enable or disable Han Xin, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Han Xin
(1)

***Disable Han Xin**
(0)

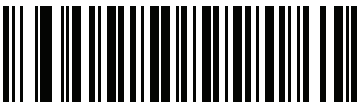
Han Xin Inverse

Parameter # 1168

Select a Han Xin inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - the decoder decodes Han Xin bar codes with normal reflectance only.
- **Inverse Only** - the decoder decodes Han Xin bar codes with inverse reflectance only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the decoder decodes both regular and inverse Han Xin bar codes.

***Regular**
(0)



Inverse Only
(1)

Inverse Autodetect
(2)

Redundancy Level

Parameter # 78

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode redundancy. Select higher redundancy levels for decreasing levels of bar code quality. As redundancy levels increase, the digital scanner's aggressiveness decreases.

Select the redundancy level appropriate for the bar code quality.

Redundancy Level 1

The following code types must be successfully read twice before being decoded:

Table 10-2 *Redundancy Level 1 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
Codabar	8 characters or less
MSI	4 characters or less
D 2 of 5	8 characters or less
I 2 of 5	8 characters or less

Redundancy Level 2

The following code types must be successfully read twice before being decoded:

Table 10-3 *Redundancy Level 2 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
All	All

Redundancy Level 3

Code types other than the following must be successfully read twice before being decoded. The following codes must be read three times:

Table 10-4 *Redundancy Level 3 Codes*

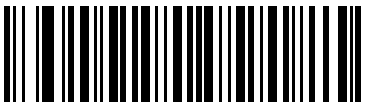
Code Type	Code Length
MSI	4 characters or less
D 2 of 5	8 characters or less
I 2 of 5	8 characters or less
Codabar	8 characters or less

Redundancy Level 4

The following code types must be successfully read three times before being decoded:

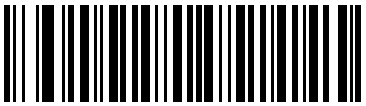
Table 10-5 *Redundancy Level 4 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
All	All



***Redundancy Level 1**
(1)

Redundancy Level 2
(2)



Redundancy Level 3
(3)

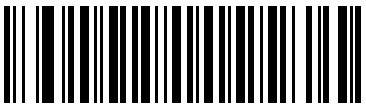
Redundancy Level 4
(4)

Security Level

Parameter # 77

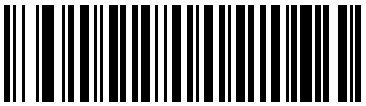
The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for delta bar codes, which include UPC/EAN and Code 93. Select increasing levels of security for decreasing levels of bar code quality. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness, so choose only that level of security necessary for any given application.

- **Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most “in-spec” bar codes.
- **Security Level 1:** This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Security Level 2:** Select this option if Security level 1 fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Security Level 3:** If you selected Security Level 2 and misdecodes still occur, select this security level. Be advised, selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out of spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If you need this level of security, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.



Security Level 0
(0)

***Security Level 1**
(1)



Security Level 2
(2)

Security Level 3
(3)

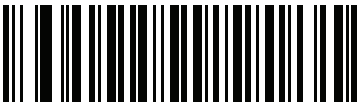
1D Quiet Zone Level

Parameter # 1288

This feature sets the level of aggressiveness in decoding bar codes with a reduced quiet zone (the area in front of and at the end of a bar code), and applies to symbologies enabled by a Reduced Quiet Zone parameter. Because higher levels increase the decoding time and risk of misdecodes, Zebra strongly recommends enabling only the symbologies which require higher quiet zone levels, and leaving Reduced Quiet Zone disabled for all other symbologies. Options are:

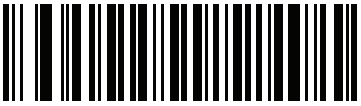
- 0 - The digital scanner performs normally in terms of quiet zone.
- 1 - The digital scanner performs more aggressively in terms of quiet zone.
- 2 - The digital scanner only requires one side EB (end of bar code) for decoding.
- 3 - The digital scanner decodes anything in terms of quiet zone or end of bar code.

1D Quiet Zone Level 0
(0)



***1D Quiet Zone Level 1**
(1)

1D Quiet Zone Level 2
(2)



1D Quiet Zone Level 3
(3)

Intercharacter Gap Size

Parameter # 381

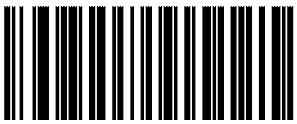
The Code 39 and Codabar symbologies have an intercharacter gap that is typically quite small. Due to various bar code-printing technologies, this gap can grow larger than the maximum size allowed, preventing the digital scanner from decoding the symbol. If this problem occurs, scan the **Large Intercharacter Gaps** parameter to tolerate these out-of-specification bar codes.

***Normal Intercharacter Gaps (6)**

Large Intercharacter Gaps (10)

Report Version

Scan the bar code below to report the version of software installed in the digital scanner.



Report Software Version

Macro PDF Features

Macro PDF is a special feature for concatenating multiple PDF symbols into one file. The scanner can decode symbols that are encoded with this feature, and can store more than 64 Kb of decoded data stored in up to 50 MacroPDF symbols.

CAUTION When printing, keep each Macro PDF sequence separate, as each sequence has unique identifiers. Do not mix bar codes from several Macro PDF sequences, even if they encode the same data. When scanning Macro PDF sequences, scan the entire Macro PDF sequence without interruption. If, when scanning a mixed sequence, the digital scanner emits two long low beeps (Low/Low) this indicates an inconsistent file ID or inconsistent symbology error.

Flush Macro Buffer

This flushes the buffer of all decoded Macro PDF data stored to that point, transmits it to the host device, and aborts from Macro PDF mode.

Flush Macro PDF Buffer

Abort Macro PDF Entry

This clears all currently-stored Macro PDF data in the buffer without transmission and aborts from Macro PDF mode.

Abort Macro PDF Entry

CHAPTER 11 123SCAN AND SOFTWARE TOOLS

Introduction

This chapter briefly describes the Zebra software tools available for customizing scanner operation.

123Scan

123Scan is a software tool that simplifies scanner setup and more.

Intuitive enough for first time users, the 123Scan wizard guides users through a streamlined setup process. Settings are saved in a configuration file that can be printed as a single programming bar code for scanning, emailed to a smart phone for scanning from its screen, or downloaded to the scanner using a USB cable.

Through 123Scan a user can:

- Configure a scanner using a wizard
  - Program the following scanner settings:
    - Beeper tone / volume settings
    - Enable / disable symbologies
    - Communication settings
    - Preferred Symbol
  - Modify data before transmission to a host using:
    - Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) - Scan one bar code per trigger pull
    - Multicode Data Formatting (MDF) - Scan many bar codes in one trigger pull
- Load parameter settings to a scanner via:
  - Bar code scanning:
    - Scan a paper bar code
    - Scan a bar code from a PC screen
    - Scan a bar code from a smart phone screen
  - Download over a USB cable:
    - Load settings to one scanner
    - Stage up to 10 scanners simultaneously

- Validate scanner setup:
  - View scanned data within the utility's Data View screen
  - Capture an image and save to a PC within the utility's Data View screen
  - Review settings using the Parameter Report
  - Clone settings from an already deployed scanner
- Upgrade scanner firmware:
  - Load settings to one scanner
  - Stage up to 10 scanners simultaneously with a power USB hub
- View statistics such as:
  - Asset tracking information
  - Time and usage information
  - Bar codes scanned by symbology
  - Battery diagnostics
  - Communication diagnostics
- Generate the following reports:
  - Barcode Report - Programming bar code, included parameter settings, and supported scanner models
  - Parameter Report - Lists parameters programmed within a configuration file
  - Activity Report - Lists activities performed on a scanner(s)
  - Inventory Report - Lists scanner asset tracking information
  - Validation Report - Printout of scanned data
  - Statistics Report - Lists all statistics retrieved from the scanner

For more information go to: http://www.zebra.com/123Scan.

Communication with 123Scan

Use a USB cable to connect the scanner to a Windows host computer running 123Scan.

123Scan Requirements

- Host computer running Windows
- Scanner
- USB cable

123Scan Information

For more information on123Scan, go to: http://www.zebra.com/123Scan

For a 1 minute tour of 123Scan, go to: http://www.zebra.com/ScannerHowToVideos

To download any of the following free tools, go to: http://www.zebra.com/scannersoftware

- 123Scan configuration utility (described in this chapter)
- How-to-videos

Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos

Tackle all your scanner programming needs with our diversified set of software tools. Whether you need to simply stage a device, or develop a fully featured application with image and data capture as well as asset management, these tools help you every step of the way.

To download any of the following free tools, go to: http://www.zebra.com/scannersoftware.

- 123Scan configuration utility
- SDKs
  - Scanner SDK for Windows
  - Scanner SDK for Android
  - Scanner SDK for iOS
  - Scanner SDK for Linux
- Drivers
  - OPOS driver
  - JPOS driver
  - TWAIN driver
  - USB CDC driver
  - Virtual COM port driver
- Scanner Management Service (SMS) for Remote Management
  - Windows
  - Linux
  - IBM 4690
- Mobile Apps
  - Scanner Control App
    - Android
    - iOS
    - Windows
    - Zebra AppGallery
  - Scan-To-Connect Utility
    - Android
    - iOS
    - Windows

    - Zebra AppGallery
- How-To-Videos
- User documentation.

Advanced Data Formatting (ADF)

Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) is a means of customizing data from before transmission to the host device. Use ADF to edit scan data to suit your host's requirements. With ADF you scan one bar code per trigger pull. ADF is programmed using 123Scan.

For an ADF tutorial and a 123Scan programming example, go to the 123Scan section of our How To Videos: http://www.zebra.com/ScannerHowToVideos

For additional information, refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*.

CHAPTER 12 DRIVER'S LICENSE SET UP (DS9208-DL)

Introduction

The DS9208-DL digital scanner is capable of parsing out information from standard US driver's licenses and certain other American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators (AAMVA) compliant ID cards. This is achieved using internally embedded algorithms, where scanning bar codes activates algorithms internally embedded in the digital scanner to produce formatted data. Use the formatted data for age verification, credit card application information, and more.

This chapter describes how to program the DS9208-DL digital scanner to read and use the data contained in the 2D bar codes on US driver's licenses and AAMVA compliant ID cards.

Table 12-1 *DL Parsing Parameter Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
DL Parsing Parameters		
Driver's License Parsing	No Driver's License Parsing	*12-2*
Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes	N/A	*12-4*
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes	N/A	*12-7*
Set Default Parameter	N/A	*12-17*
Output Gender as M or F	N/A	*12-17*
Date Format	CCYYMMDD	*12-18*
No Separator	N/A	*12-19*
Send Keystroke Control Characters Keyboard Characters	N/A	*12-20* *12-20* *12-24*
Parsing Rule Example	N/A	*12-39*
Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example	N/A	*12-43*

Driver's License Parsing

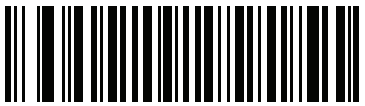
To enable driver's license parsing on the digital scanner, scan the **Embedded Driver's License Parsing** bar code. This does not require Zebra software (.DLL).

Scan the bar codes on the following pages in the order indicating the sequence of data fields that the digital scanner outputs. See *Parsing Driver's License Data Fields (Embedded Driver's License Parsing) on page 12-3* for more information.

As jurisdictional updates become available, Zebra updates a series of bar codes on the Zebra Web site: http://www.zebra.com/support.

These bar codes contain embedded software. Scanning these in conjunction with the bar codes on *page 12-4* download jurisdictional software updates to the digital scanner. The updates reside in the digital scanner's flash memory and apply when the digital scanner is next used.

***No Driver's License Parsing**



Embedded Driver's License Parsing

Parsing Driver’s License Data Fields (Embedded Driver's License Parsing)

To begin programming a parsing rule:

1. Scan *Begin New Driver’s License Parse Rule on page 12-4*.
2. Scan any of the field bar codes on the following pages, or ***Send Keystroke (Control Characters and Keyboard Characters) on page 12-20*** to complete the parsing rule.
3. After entering the entire rule, scan *Save Driver’s License Parse Rule on page 12-4* to save the rule.

> ***NOTE*** Only ONE driver’s license parsing rule may be stored in memory at any time. Saving a new rule replaces the prior rule.

To abort the programming sequence at any time during programming, scan *Quit Entering Driver’s License Rule on page 12-4*. Any previously saved rule is retained.

To erase a programmed saved rule, scan *Erase Driver’s License Parse Rules on page 12-4*.

Embedded Driver's License Parsing Criteria - Code Type

After specifying the fields and their order for the parsed driver's license, you can also apply standard ADF rules to the parsed data using the **Parsed Driver’s License** criterion bar code in the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*

> ***NOTE*** Only create standard ADF rules on parsed driver's license data when configured for Embedded Driver's License Parsing.

See *Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example on page 12-43* for a sample ADF rule using this code type criterion.

Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes

Begin New Driver's License Parse Rule

Save Driver's License Parse Rule

Quit Entering Driver's License Rule

Erase Driver's License Parse Rules

Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

The parse fields currently supported begin below. Not all IDs present data in the same format. For example, some IDs may have separate fields for first name, last name, and middle initial, and others may have a single field with the entire name. In addition, some IDs may expire on the subject's birth date and the actual expiration date field may only indicate the year. In order to present data in a consistent format, the following nine bar codes return data that may be calculated from the actual data contained within the ID bar code.

First Name

Middle Name/Initial

Last Name

Name Suffix

Name Prefix

Expiration Date

Birth Date

Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Issue Date

ID Number (Formatted)

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes

AAMVA Issuer ID

Full Name

Last Name

First Name

Middle Name / Initial

Name Suffix

Name Prefix

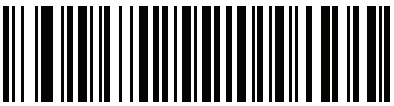
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Mailing Address Line 1

Mailing Address Line 2

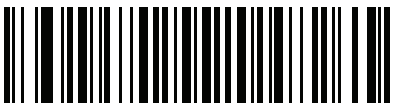
Mailing Address City

Mailing Address State



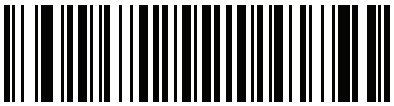
Mailing Address Postal Code

Home Address Line 1

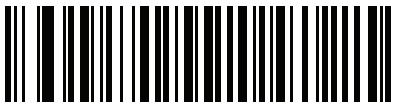


Home Address Line 2

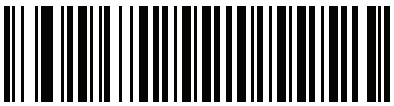
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)



Home Address City



Home Address State

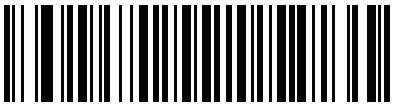


Home Address Postal Code

License ID Number

License Class

License Restrictions



License Endorsements

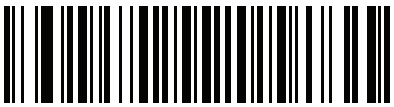
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Height (Feet and/or Inches)

Height (Centimeters)

Weight (Pounds)

Weight (Kilograms)

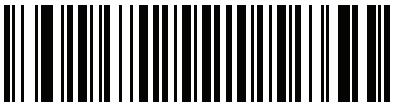


Eye Color

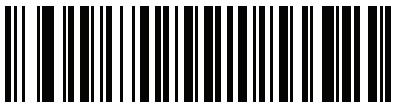
Hair Color

License Expiration Date

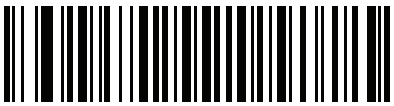
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)



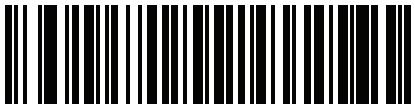
Birth Date



Gender



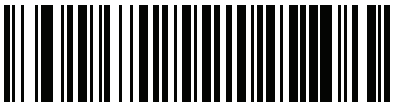
License Issue Date



License Issue State

Social Security Number

Permit Class



Permit Expiration Date

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Permit ID Number

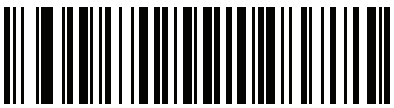
Permit Issue Date

Permit Restrictions

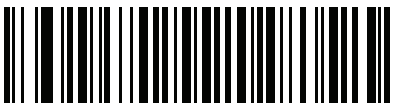
Permit Endorsements

AKA Social Security Name

AKA Full Name



AKA Last Name



AKA First Name

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

AKA Middle Name / Initial

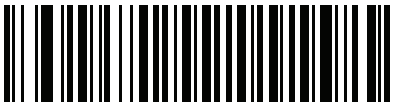
AKA Name Suffix

AKA Name Prefix

AKA Birth Date

Issue Timestamp

Number of Duplicates



Medical Codes

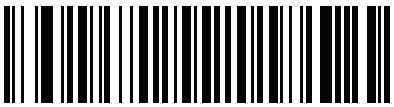
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Organ Donor

Nonresident

Customer ID

Weight Range

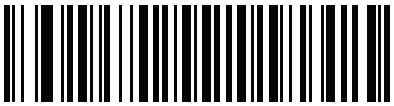


Document Discriminator

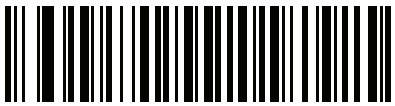
Country

Federal Commission Codes

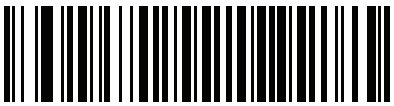
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)



Place of Birth



Audit Information

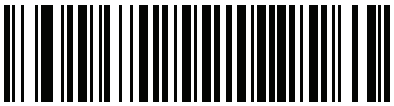


Inventory Control

Race / Ethnicity

Std Vehicle Class

Std Endorsements



Std Restrictions

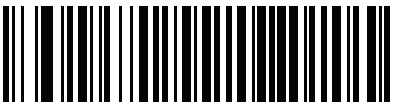
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Class Description

Endorsement Description

Restrictions Description

Height in Inches



Height in Centimeters

Parser Version ID Bar Codes

Include this field to emit embedded parser software version identification

Parser Version ID

User Preferences

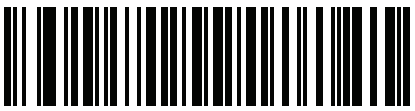
Set Default Parameter

Scan this bar code to return all parameters to the default values listed in *Table A-1 on page A-1*.

***Set All Defaults**

Output Gender as M or F

Scan this bar code to report the gender as **M** or **F** instead of a numeric value**.**



Output gender as M or F

Date Format

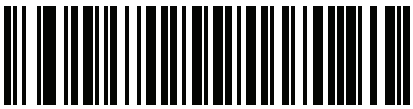
Use these bar codes to select the date format that is displayed. Date fields include the following:

- **CCYY** = 4-digit year (**CC**=2-digit century [00-99], **YY**=2-digit year in the century [00-99])
- **MM** = 2-digit month [01-12]
- **DD** = 2-digit day of the month [00-31]

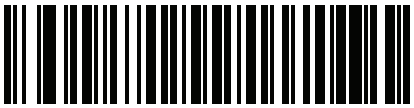
The default is Date Format **CCYYMMDD**.

NOTE To specify a date separator, i.e., a character separating each field of the date, scan the **Send <character>** bar code that corresponds to the alphanumeric character to use as the date separator immediately following the date format bar code. To select no date separator, scan the **No Separator** DL parsing rule immediately following the date format bar code.

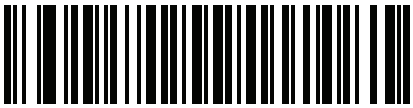
***CCYYMMDD**



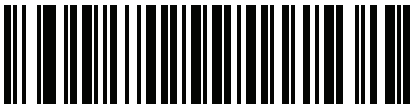
CCYYDDMM



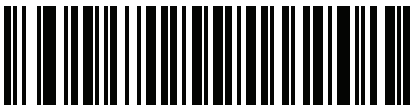
MMDDCCYY



MMCCYYDD

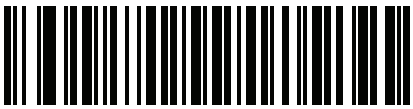


DDMMCCYY

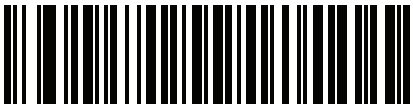


DDCCYYMM

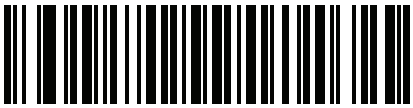
Date Format (continued)



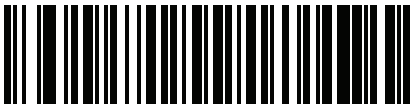
YYMMDD



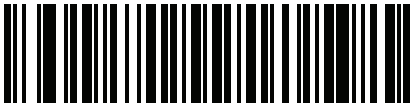
YYDDMM



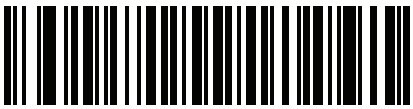
MMDDYY



MMYYDD



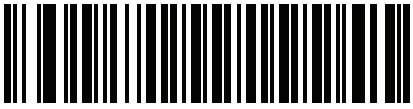
DDMMYY



DDYYMM

No Separator

Scan this bar code immediately following a date format bar code to use no separator character between the date fields.



No Separator

Send Keystroke (Control Characters and Keyboard Characters)

Control Characters

Scan a **Send** bar code for the keystroke to send.

Send Control A

Send Control B

Send Control C

Send Control D

Send Control E

Send Control F

Send Control G

Send Control H

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control I

Send Control J

Send Control K

Send Control L

Send Control M

Send Control N

Send Control O

Send Control P

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control Q

Send Control R

Send Control S

Send Control T

Send Control U

Send Control V

Send Control W

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control X

Send Control Y

Send Control Z

Send Control [

**Send Control **

Send Control]

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control 6

Send Control -

Keyboard Characters

Scan a **Send** bar code for the keyboard characters to send.

Send Space

Send !

Send “

Send #

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send $

Send %

Send &

Send ‘

Send (

Send)

Send *

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send +

Send ,

Send -

Send .

Send /

Send 0

Send 1

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send 2

Send 3

Send 4

Send 5

Send 6

Send 7

Send 8

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send 9

Send :

Send ;

Send <

Send =

Send >

Send ?

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send @

Send A

Send B

Send C

Send D

Send E

Send F

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send G

Send H

Send I

Send J

Send K

Send L

Send M

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send N

Send O

Send P

Send Q

Send R

Send S

Send T

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send U

Send V

Send W

Send X

Send Y

Send Z

Send [

Keyboard Characters (continued)

**Send **

Send]

Send ^

Send _

Send `

Send a

Send b

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send c

Send d

Send e

Send f

Send g

Send h

Send i

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send j

Send k

Send l

Send m

Send n

Send o

Send p

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send q

Send r

Send s

Send t

Send u

Send v

Send w

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send x

Send y

Send z

Send {

Send |

Send }

Send ~

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send Tab Key

Send Enter Key

Parsing Rule Example

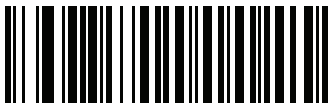
Scan the following bar codes in sequence to program the digital scanner to extract and transmit first, middle, and last names; mailing address line 1; mailing address line 2; mailing address city; mailing address state; mailing address postal code; and, date of birth. Then, scan a driver's license bar code.

NOTE This example applies to RS-232. To use this example with a USB interface, scan *Enable Function Key Mapping on page 6-12* in place of the **Send Control M (Carriage Return)** bar codes.

1

Embedded Driver's License Parsing

2



Begin New Driver's License Parse Rule

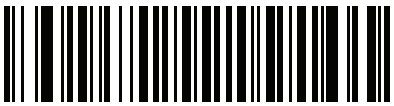
3

First Name

4

Send Space

5



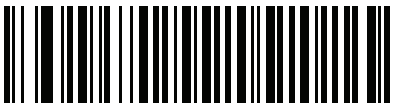
Middle Name / Initial

6

Send Space

Parsing Rule Example (continued)

7



Last Name

8

Send Enter Key

9

Mailing Address Line 1

10

Send Space

11

Mailing Address Line 2

12

Send Enter Key

Parsing Rule Example (continued)

13

Mailing Address City

14

Send Space

15

Mailing Address State

16

Send Space

17

Mailing Address Postal Code

Parsing Rule Example (continued)

18

Send Enter Key

19

Birth Date

20

Send Enter Key

21

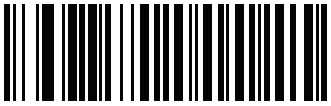
Save Driver's Licence Parse Rule

Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example

This example creates a parsing rule for parsed data configured to result in the format:

Last Name, First Name

1



Begin New Driver’s License Parse Rule

2

Last Name

3

Send ,

4

Send Space

5

First Name

6

Save Driver’s Licence Parse Rule

Then, in order to limit the full name to 15 characters, create the following ADF rule:

1

Begin New Rule

2

Criterion: Parsed Driver's License

3

Action: Send Next 15 Characters

4

Save Rule

For a license belonging to Michael Williams, the parsed data is Williams, Michael and Williams, Micha after applying the previous ADF rule.

APPENDIX A STANDARD DEFAULT PARAMETERS

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
User Preferences			
Set Default Parameter	N/A	Set Defaults	*4-4*
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	236	Enable	*4-5*
Beep After Good Decode	56	Enable	*4-5*
Beeper Tone	145	Medium	*4-6*
Beeper Volume	140	High	*4-7*
Volume Adjustment Trigger Timeout	403	5.0 Sec	*4-8*
Beeper Duration	628	Medium	*4-9*
Suppress Power-up Beeps	721	Do not suppress	*4-9*
Low Power Mode	128	Disable	*4-10*
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	146	1 Hour	*4-11*
Trigger Mode	138	Presentation	*4-13*
Trigger Aiming Pattern	306	Enable	*4-14*
Presentation Aiming Pattern	590	Disable	*4-15*
Momentary Trigger Mode Timeout	237	5 sec	*4-16*
Motion Detect Range	827	Full	*4-17*
Decoding Illumination (Hand-Held Mode Only)	298	Enable	*4-18*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Post Decode Illumination	809	Always Off	*4-18*
Illumination Always On (Presentation Mode Only)	857	Illumination Automatically Controlled	*4-19*
Illumination Control Timer (Dim Mode)	663	1 minute	*4-20*
Presentation Mode Field of View	609	Full	*4-22*
Picklist Mode	402	Enabled in Trigger Mode	*4-23*
Continuous Bar Code Read	649	Disable	*4-24*
Unique Bar Code Reporting	723	Disable	*4-24*
Decode Session Timeout	136	9.9 Sec	*4-25*
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	137	0.4 Sec	*4-25*
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	144	0.0 Sec	*4-26*
Fuzzy 1D Processing	514	Enable	*4-26*
Decode Mirror Images	537	Auto	*4-27*
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	716	Enable in Both Hand-Held and Hands-Free Modes	*4-28*
PDF Prioritization	719	Disable	*4-29*
PDF Prioritization Timeout	720	200 ms	*4-29*
Multicode Mode	677	Disable	*4-30*
Multicode Expression	661	1	*4-31*
Multicode Mode Concatenation	717	Disable	*4-36*
Multicode Concatenation Symbology	722	Concatenate as PDF417	*4-37*
Miscellaneous Options			
Transmit Code ID Character	45	None	*4-40*
Prefix Value	99, 105	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-41*
Suffix 1 Value Suffix 2 Value	98, 104 100, 106	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-41*
Scan Data Transmission Format	235	Data as is	*4-42*
FN1 Substitution Values	103, 109	Set	*4-43*
Transmit “No Read” Message	94	Disable	*4-44*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Imaging Preferences			
Operational Modes	N/A	N/A	*5-4*
Image Capture Illumination	361	Enable	*5-5*
Snapshot Mode Timeout	323	0 (30 seconds)	*5-6*
Snapshot Aiming Pattern	300	Enable	*5-6*
Image Cropping	301	Disable	*5-7*
Crop to Pixel Addresses	315 316 317 318	0 top 0 left 479 bottom 751 right	*5-8*
Image Size (Number of Pixels)	302	Full	*5-9*
Image Brightness (Target White)	390	180	*5-10*
JPEG Image Options	299	Quality	*5-10*
JPEG Target File Size	561	160 kB	*5-11*
JPEG Quality and Size Value	305	65	*5-11*
Image Enhancement	564	Low (1)	*5-12*
Image File Format Selection	304	JPEG	*5-13*
Image Rotation	665	0	*5-14*
Bits per Pixel (BPP)	303	8 BPP	*5-15*
Signature Capture	93	Disable	*5-16*
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	313	JPEG	*5-17*
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	314	8 BPP	*5-18*
Signature Capture Width	366	400	*5-19*
Signature Capture Height	367	100	*5-19*
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	421	65	*5-19*
USB Host Parameters			
USB Device Type	N/A	USB HID Keyboard	*6-5*
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	N/A	Enable	*6-7*
USB Keystroke Delay	N/A	No Delay	*6-7*
Simulated Caps Lock	N/A	Disable	*6-8*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
USB CAPS Lock Override	N/A	Disable	6-8
USB Ignore Unknown Characters	N/A	Enable	6-9
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39	N/A	Disable	6-9
USB Beep Directive	N/A	Honor	6-10
USB Bar Code Configuration Directive	N/A	Honor	6-10
Emulate Keypad	N/A	Disable	6-11
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero	N/A	Disable	6-11
USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution	N/A	Disable	6-12
Function Key Mapping	N/A	Disable	6-12
Convert Case	N/A	No Case Conversion	6-13
USB Static CDC	N/A	Enable	6-13
CDC Beep on BEL	N/A	Enable	6-14
Direct I/O Beeps	N/A	Honor	6-14
USB Polling Interval	N/A	3 msec	6-15
USB Fast HID	N/A	Enable	6-17
Quick Keypad Emulation	N/A	Disable	6-17
IBM Specification Version	N/A	Original Specification	6-18
RS-232 Host Parameters			
RS-232 Host Types	N/A	Standard[1]	7-6
Baud Rate	N/A	9600	7-8
Parity Type	N/A	None	7-9
Stop Bits	N/A	1	7-10
Data Bits	N/A	8-bit	7-10
Check Receive Errors	N/A	Enable	7-11
Hardware Handshaking	N/A	None	7-11
Software Handshaking	N/A	None	7-13
Host Serial Response Timeout	N/A	2 Sec	7-15
RTS Line State	N/A	Low RTS	7-16
Beep on <BEL>	N/A	Disable	7-16
Intercharacter Delay	N/A	0 msec	7-17

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	N/A	Normal Operation	*7-18*
Ignore Unknown Characters	N/A	Send Bar Code	*7-18*
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters			
Port Address	N/A	None Selected	*8-4*
Convert Unknown to Code 39	N/A	Disable	*8-5*
Ignore Beep Directive	N/A	Honor	*8-5*
Ignore Configuration Directive	N/A	Honor	*8-6*
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters			
Keyboard Wedge Host Type	N/A	IBM PC/AT& IBM PC Compatibles[1]	*9-4*
Ignore Unknown Characters	N/A	Transmit	*9-5*
Keystroke Delay	N/A	No Delay	*9-5*
Intra-Keystroke Delay	N/A	Disable	*9-6*
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	N/A	Disable	*9-6*
Simulated Caps Lock	N/A	Disable	*9-7*
Caps Lock Override	N/A	Disable	*9-8*
Convert Wedge Data	N/A	No Convert	*9-8*
Function Key Mapping	N/A	Disable	*9-9*
FN1 Substitution	N/A	Disable	*9-9*
Send and Make Break	N/A	Send	*9-10*
Symbology Parameters			
Disable All Code Types			*10-8*
UPC/EAN			
UPC-A	1	Enable	*10-9*
UPC-E	2	Enable	*10-9*
UPC-E1	12	Disable	*10-10*
EAN-8/JAN 8	4	Enable	*10-10*
EAN-13/JAN 13	3	Enable	*10-11*
Bookland EAN	83	Disable	*10-11*
Bookland ISBN Format	576	ISBN-10	*10-12*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2 and 5 digits)	16	Ignore	*10-13*
User-Programmable Supplementals Supplemental 1: Supplemental 2:	 579 580		*10-16*
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	80	10	*10-16*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	672	Combined	*10-17*
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone	1289	Disable	*10-18*
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	40	Enable	*10-18*
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	41	Enable	*10-19*
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	42	Enable	*10-19*
UPC-A Preamble	34	System Character	*10-20*
UPC-E Preamble	35	System Character	*10-21*
UPC-E1 Preamble	36	System Character	*10-22*
Convert UPC-E to A	37	Disable	*10-23*
Convert UPC-E1 to A	38	Disable	*10-23*
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend	39	Disable	*10-24*
UCC Coupon Extended Code	85	Disable	*10-24*
Coupon Report	730	New Coupon Symbols	*10-25*
ISSN EAN	617	Disable	*10-26*
Code 128			
Code 128	8	Enable	*10-27*
Set Length(s) for Code 128	209, 210	Any Length	*10-28*
GS1-128	14	Enable	*10-29*
ISBT 128	84	Enable	*10-29*
ISBT Concatenation	577	Disable	*10-30*
Check ISBT Table	578	Enable	*10-31*
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	223	10	*10-31*
Code 128 Security Level	751	Security Level 1	*10-32*
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone	1208	Disable	*10-33*
Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>	1254	Disable	*10-33*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Code 39			
Code 39	0	Enable	*10-34*
Trioptic Code 39	13	Disable	*10-34*
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	86	Disable	*10-35*
Code 32 Prefix	231	Disable	*10-35*
Set Length(s) for Code 39	18, 19	Length Within Range: 2 to 55	*10-36*
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	48	Disable	*10-37*
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	43	Disable	*10-37*
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	17	Disable	*10-38*
Code 39 Security Level	750	Security Level 1	*10-39*
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone	1209	Disable	*10-40*
Code 39 Buffering	113	Disable	*10-41*
Clear Buffer	N/A	N/A	*10-42*
Transmit Buffer	N/A	N/A	*10-42*
Code 93			
Code 93	9	Disable	*10-43*
Set Length(s) for Code 93	26, 27	Length Within Range: 4 to 55	*10-44*
Code 11			
Code 11	10	Disable	*10-45*
Set Lengths for Code 11	28, 29	Length Within Range: 4 to 55	*10-46*
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	52	Disable	*10-47*
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	47	Disable	*10-48*
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)			
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	6	Enable	*10-49*
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	22, 23	Length within Range: 6 - 55	*10-49*
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	49	Disable	*10-51*
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	44	Disable	*10-51*
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	82	Disable	*10-52*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
I 2 of 5 Security Level	1121	Security Level 1	*10-53*
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone	1210	Disable	*10-54*
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)			
Discrete 2 of 5	5	Disable	*10-55*
Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5	20, 21	1 Length: 12	*10-55*
Codabar (NW - 7)			
Codabar	7	Disable	*10-57*
Set Lengths for Codabar	24, 25	Length Within Range: 5 to 55	*10-58*
CLSI Editing	54	Disable	*10-59*
NOTIS Editing	55	Disable	*10-59*
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection	855	Lower Case	*10-60*
MSI			
MSI	11	Disable	*10-61*
Set Length(s) for MSI	30, 31	Length Within Range: 4 to 55	*10-61*
MSI Check Digits	50	One	*10-63*
Transmit MSI Check Digit	46	Disable	*10-63*
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	51	Mod 10/Mod 10	*10-64*
Chinese 2 of 5			
Chinese 2 of 5	408	Disable	*10-64*
Matrix 2 of 5			
Matrix 2 of 5	618	Disable	*10-65*
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	619, 620	1 Length: 14	*10-66*
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	622	Disable	*10-67*
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	623	Disable	*10-67*
Korean 3 of 5			
Korean 3 of 5	581	Disable	*10-68*
Inverse 1D	586	Regular	*10-69*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Postal Codes			
US Postnet	89	Disable	*10-70*
US Planet	90	Disable	*10-70*
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	95	Enable	*10-71*
UK Postal	91	Disable	*10-71*
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	96	Enable	*10-72*
Japan Postal	290	Disable	*10-72*
Australia Post	291	Disable	*10-73*
Australia Post Format	718	Autodiscriminate	*10-74*
Netherlands KIX Code	326	Disable	*10-75*
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	592	Disable	*10-75*
UPU FICS Postal	611	Disable	*10-76*
Mailmark	1337	Disable	*10-76*
GS1 DataBar			
GS1 DataBar (GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional)	338	Enable	*10-77*
GS1 DataBar Limited	339	Enable	*10-78*
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level	728	3	*10-79*
GS1 DataBar Expanded (GS1 DataBar Expanded, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked)	340	Enable	*10-80*
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN	397	Disable	*10-80*
Composite			
Composite CC-C	341	Disable	*10-81*
Composite CC-A/B	342	Disable	*10-81*
Composite TLC-39	371	Disable	*10-82*
UPC Composite Mode	344	Never Linked	*10-82*
Composite Beep Mode	398	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	*10-83*
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	427	Disable	*10-83*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
2D Symbologies			
PDF417	15	Enable	*10-84*
MicroPDF417	227	Disable	*10-84*
Code 128 Emulation	123	Disable	*10-85*
Data Matrix	292	Enable	*10-86*
Data Matrix Inverse	588	Inverse Autodetect	*10-86*
GS1 Data Matrix	1336	Disable	*10-87*
Maxicode	294	Disable	*10-87*
QR Code	293	Enable	*10-88*
GS1 QR	1343	Disable	*10-88*
MicroQR	573	Enable	*10-89*
Aztec	574	Enable	*10-90*
Aztec Inverse	589	Inverse Autodetect	*10-90*
Han Xin	1167	Disable	*10-91*
Han Xin Inverse	1168	Regular	*10-91*
Symbology-Specific Security Levels			
Redundancy Level	78	1	*10-92*
Security Level (UPC/EAN and Code 93)	77	1	*10-94*
1D Quiet Zone Level	1288	1	*10-95*
Intercharacter Gap Size	381	Normal	*10-96*
Macro PDF			
Flush Macro PDF Buffer	N/A	N/A	*10-97*
Abort Macro PDF Entry	N/A	N/A	*10-97*
DL Parsing Parameters			
Driver's License Parsing	N/A	No Driver's License Parsing	*12-2*
Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes	N/A	N/A	*12-4*
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes	N/A	N/A	*12-7*
Set Default Parameter	N/A	N/A	*12-17*
Output Gender as M or F	N/A	N/A	*12-17*
Date Format	N/A	CCYYMMDD	*12-18*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
No Separator	N/A	N/A	*12-19*
Send Keystroke Control Characters Keyboard Characters	N/A	N/A	*12-17* *12-20* *12-24*
Parsing Rule Example	N/A	N/A	*12-39*
Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example	N/A	N/A	*12-43*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

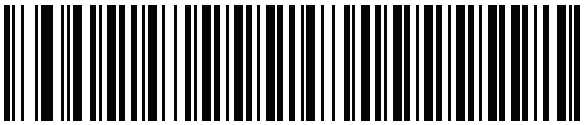
APPENDIX B COUNTRY CODES

Introduction

This chapter provides instructions for programming the keyboard to interface with a USB or keyboard wedge host. The host powers the scanner. For host setup information, see *Chapter 6, USB Interface* and *Chapter 9, Keyboard Wedge Interface*.

To select a code page for the country keyboard type, see *Appendix C, Country Code Pages*.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, default values are indicated with asterisks (*).



*Indicates Default — ***US English (North American)** — Feature/Option

USB and Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes)

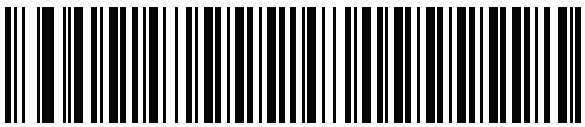
Scan the bar code corresponding to the keyboard type. For a USB host, this setting applies only to the USB Keyboard (HID) device. If the keyboard type is not listed, see *Emulate Keypad on page 6-11* for the USB HID host. For a keyboard wedge host, see *Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation on page 9-6*.

NOTE When changing USB country keyboard types the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.

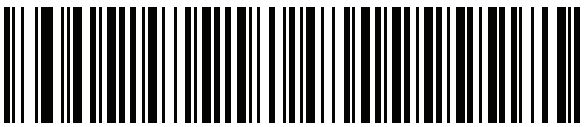
NOTE For best results when using international keyboards, enable *Quick Keypad Emulation on page 6-17*.

IMPORTANT 1. Some country keyboard bar code types are specific to certain Windows Operating Systems (i.e., XP, and Win 7 or higher). Bar codes requiring a specific Windows OS are noted so in their bar code captions.

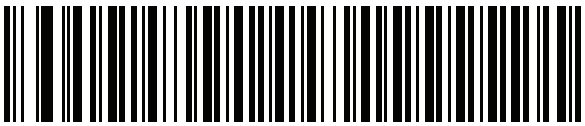
2. Use the **French International** bar code for Belgian French keyboards.



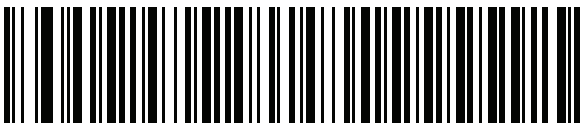
***US English (North American)**



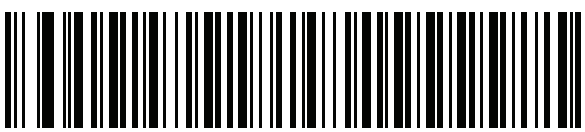
US English (Mac)



Albanian

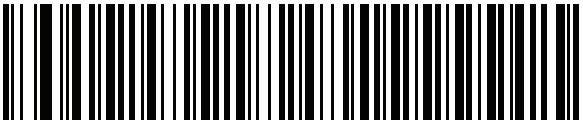


Arabic (101)

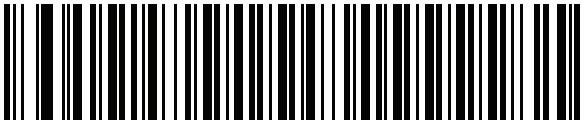


Arabic (102)

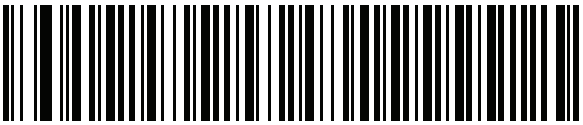
Country Codes (Continued)



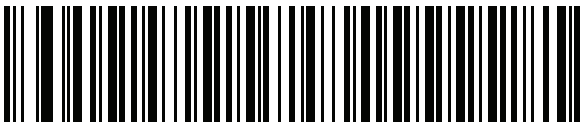
Arabic (102) AZERTY



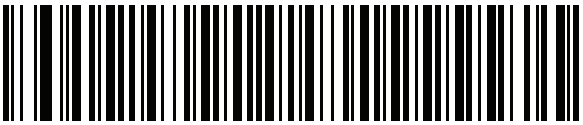
Azeri (Latin)



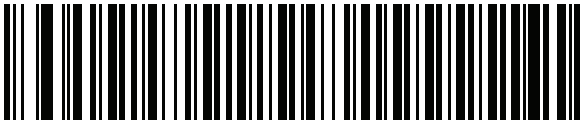
Azeri (Cyrillic)



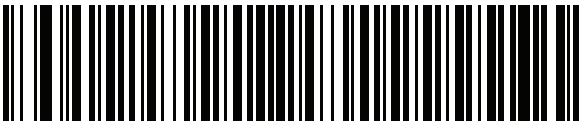
Belarusian



Bosnian (Latin)

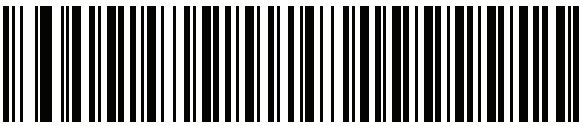


Bosnian (Cyrillic)

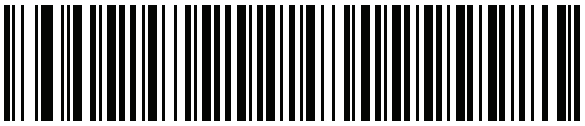


Bulgarian (Latin)

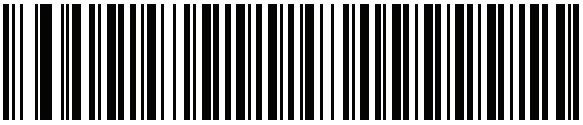
Country Codes (Continued)



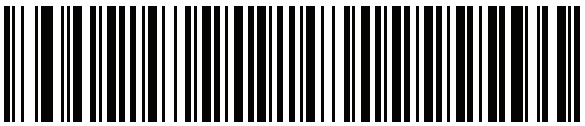
Bulgarian Cyrillic (Typewriter)
(Bulgarian -Windows XP
Typewriter - Win 7 or higher)



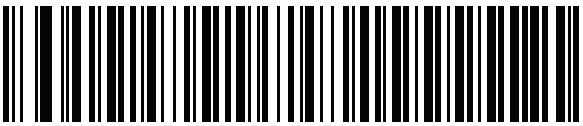
Canadian French Win7



Canadian French (Legacy)

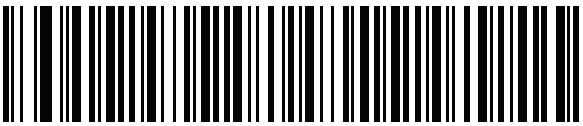


Canadian Multilingual Standard

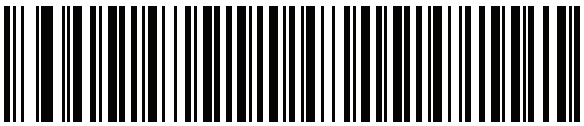


Chinese (ASCII)

Country Codes (Continued)

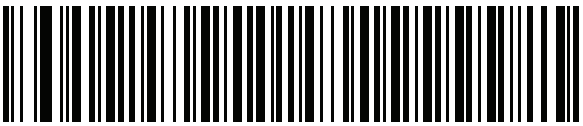


Chinese (Simplified)*



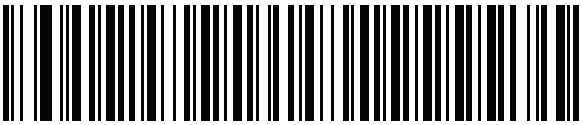
Chinese (Traditional)*

*For CJK keyboard types, see *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control*.

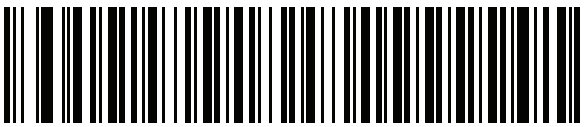


Croatian

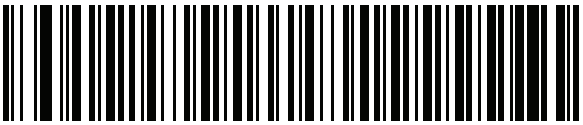
Czech



Czech (Programmer)

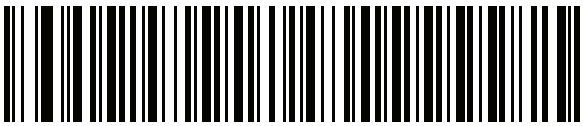


Czech (QWERTY)

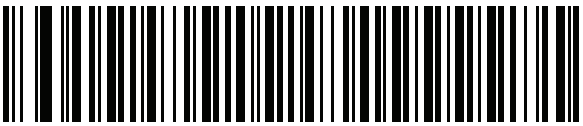


Danish

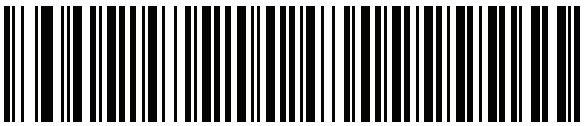
Country Codes (Continued)



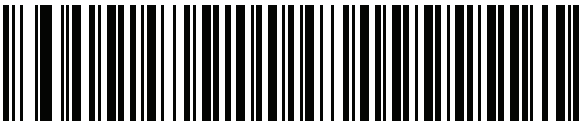
Dutch (Netherlands)



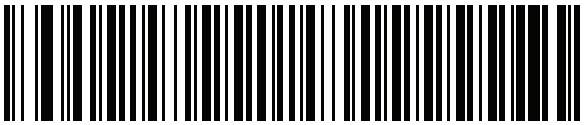
Estonian



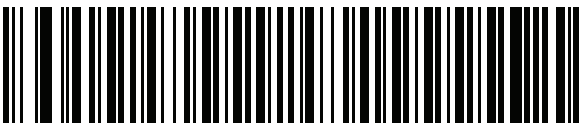
Faeroese



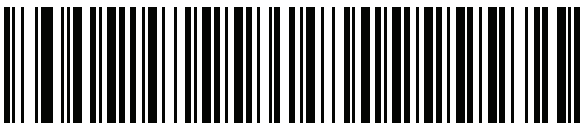
Finnish



French (France)

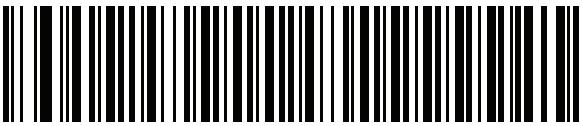


French International (Belgian French)



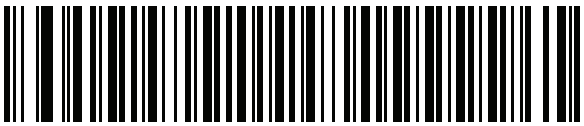
French (Canada) 95/98

Country Codes (Continued)

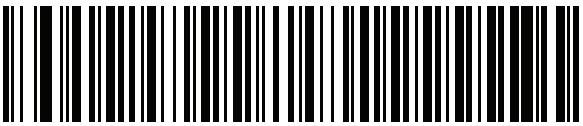


French (Canada) 2000/XP*

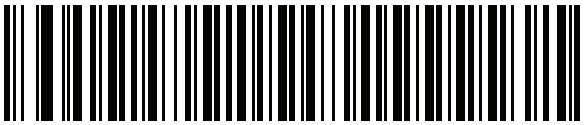
*Note that there is also a country code bar code for *Canadian Multilingual Standard on page B-4*. Be sure to select the appropriate bar code for your host system.



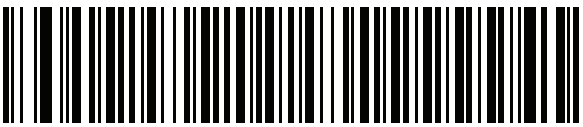
Galician



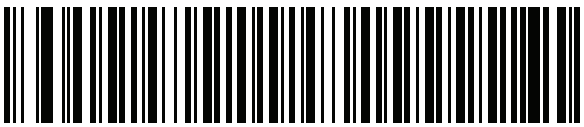
German



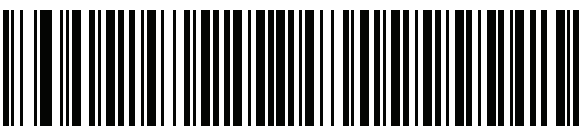
Greek Latin



Greek (220) Latin

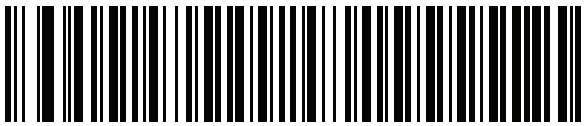


Greek (319) Latin

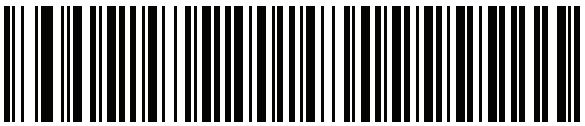


Greek

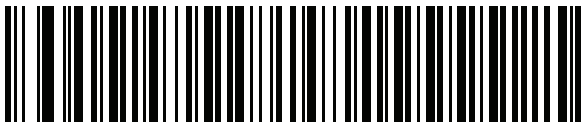
Country Codes (Continued)



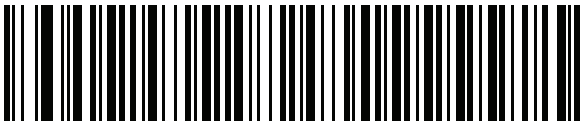
Greek (220)



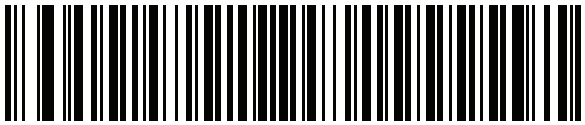
Greek (319)



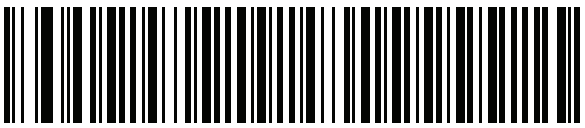
Greek Polytonic



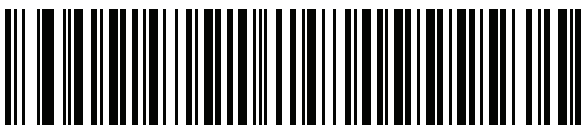
Hebrew Israel



Hungarian

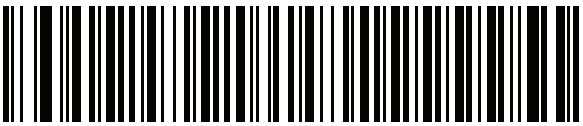


Hungarian_101KEY

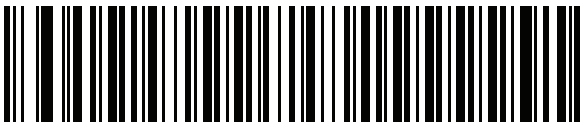


Icelandic

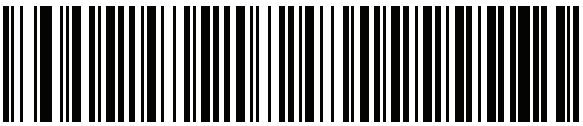
Country Codes (Continued)



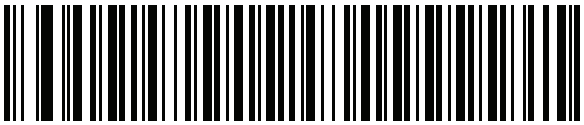
Irish



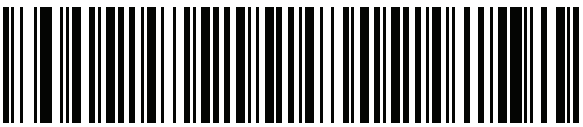
Italian



Italian (142)

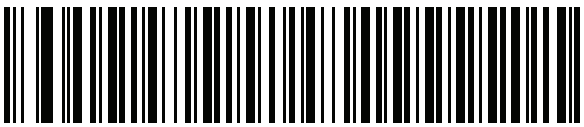


Japanese (ASCII)

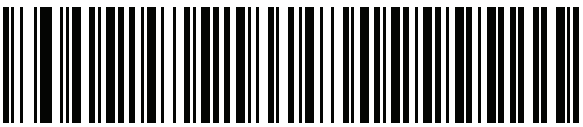


Japanese (SHIFT-JIS)*

*For CJK keyboard types, see *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control*.

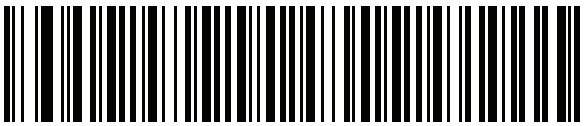


Kazakh



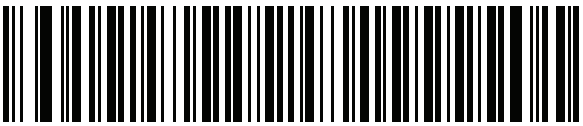
Korean (ASCII)

Country Codes (Continued)

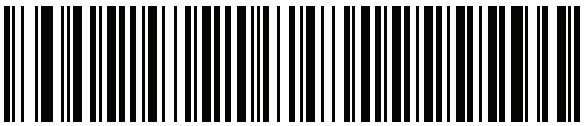


Korean (Hangul)*

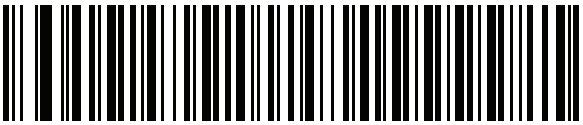
*For CJK keyboard types, see *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control*.



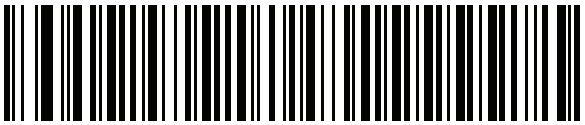
Kyrgyz



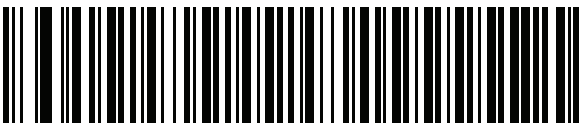
Latin American



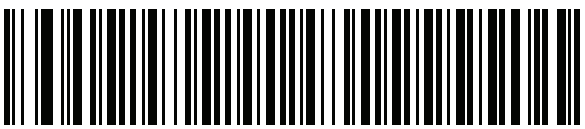
Latvian



Latvian (QWERTY)



Lithuanian



Lithuanian (IBM)

Country Codes (Continued)

Macedonian (FYROM)

Maltese_47KEY

Mongolian

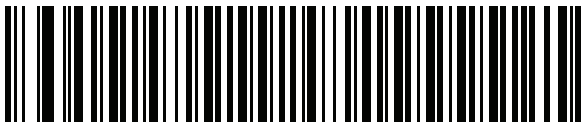
Norwegian

Polish (214)

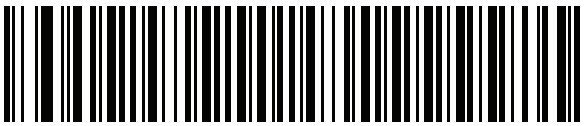
Polish (Programmer)

Portuguese (Brazil)
(Windows XP)

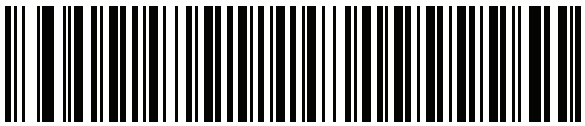
Country Codes (Continued)



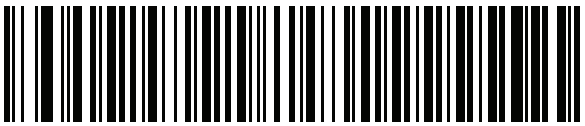
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT)



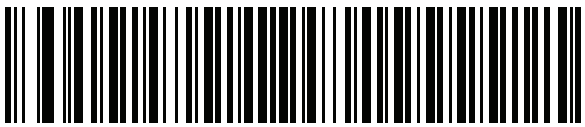
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT2)



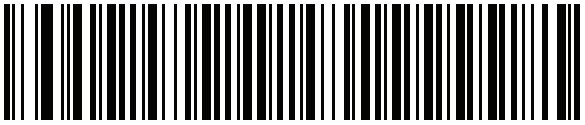
Portuguese (Portugal)



Romanian
(Windows XP)

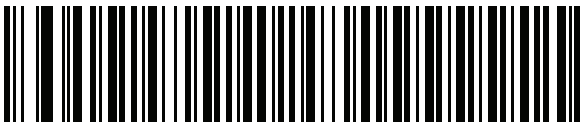


Romanian (Legacy)
(Win 7 or higher)

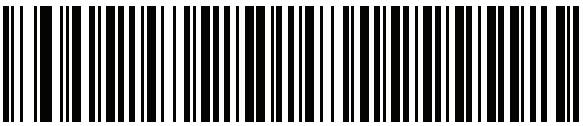


Romanian (Standard)
(Win 7 or higher)

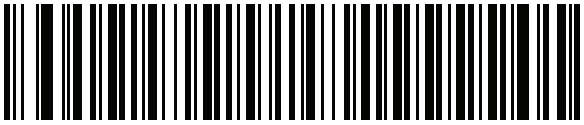
Country Codes (Continued)



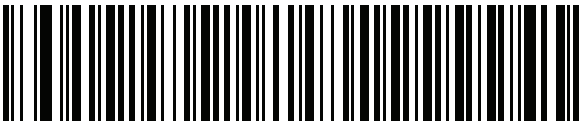
Romanian (Programmer)
(Win 7 or higher)



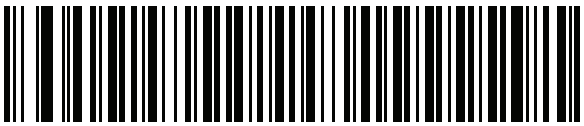
Russian



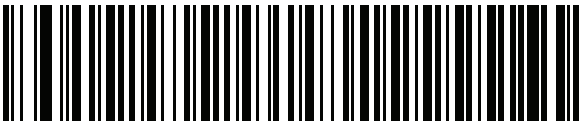
Russian (Typewriter)



Serbian (Latin)

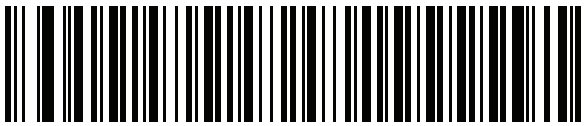


Serbian (Cyrillic)

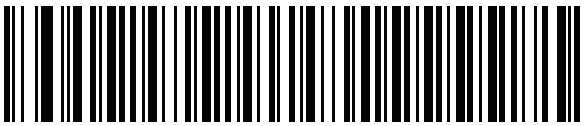


Slovak

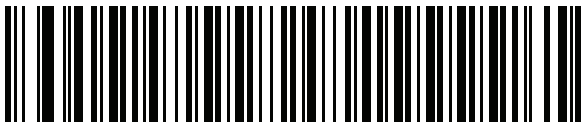
Country Codes (Continued)



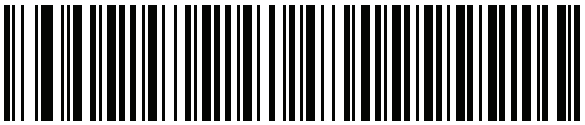
Slovak (QWERTY)



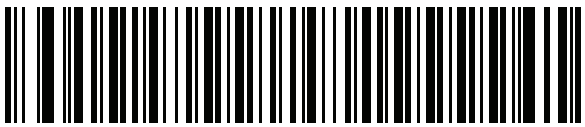
Slovenian



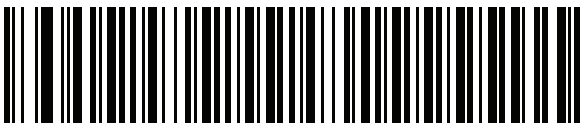
Spanish



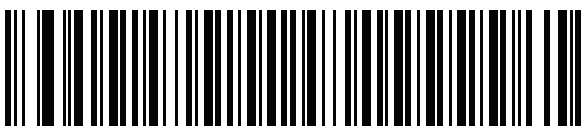
Spanish (Variation)



Swedish

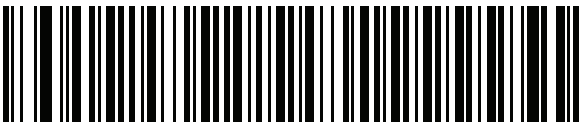


Swiss French

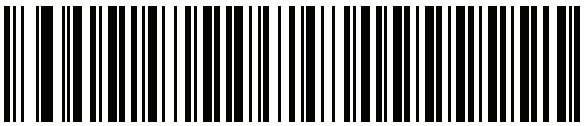


Swiss German

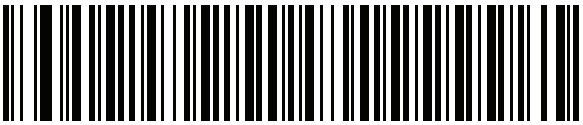
Country Codes (Continued)



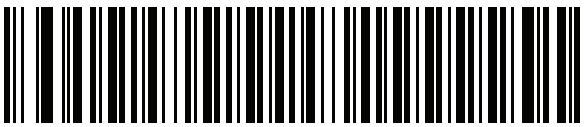
Tatar



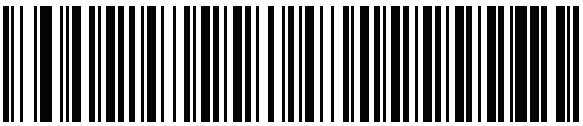
Thai (Kedmanee)



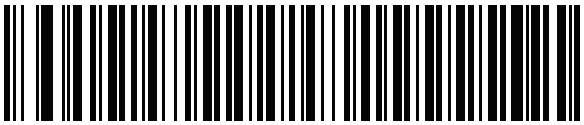
Turkish F



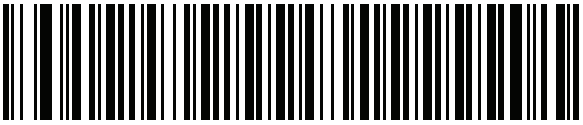
Turkish Q



UK English

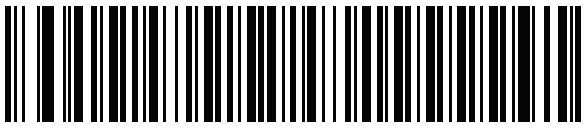


Ukrainian

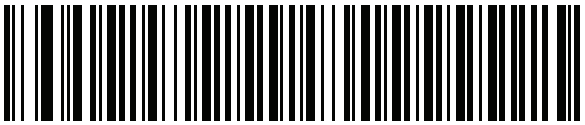


US Dvorak

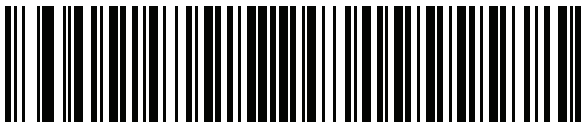
Country Codes (Continued)



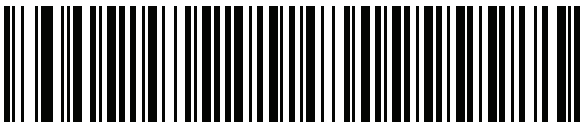
US Dvorak Left



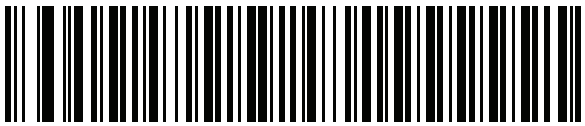
US Dvorak Right



US International



Uzbek



Vietnamese

APPENDIX C COUNTRY CODE PAGES

Introduction

This chapter provides bar codes for selecting code pages for the country keyboard type selected in *Appendix B, Country Codes*. If the default code page in *Table C-1* is appropriate for your selected country keyboard type, you do not need to scan a country code page bar code.

NOTE ADF rules can also specify a code page based on the symbology and other ADF criteria. Refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*.

Country Code Page Defaults

Table C-1 lists the code page default for each country keyboard.

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
US English (North American)	Windows 1252
US English (Mac)	Mac CP10000
Albanian	Windows 1250
Arabic 101	Windows 1256
Arabic 102	Windows 1256
Arabic 102 AZERTY	Windows 1256
Azeri Latin	Windows 1254
Azeri Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Belarusian	Windows 1251
Bosnian Latin	Windows 1250

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
Bosnian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Bulgarian Latin	Windows 1250
Bulgarian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Canadian French Win7	Windows 1252
Canadian French (Legacy)	Windows 1252
Canadian Multilingual	Windows 1252
Croatian	Windows 1250
Chinese ASCII	Windows 1252
Chinese (Simplified)	Windows 936, GBK
Chinese (Traditional)	Windows 950, Big5
Czech	Windows 1250
Czech Programmers	Windows 1250
Czech QWERTY	Windows 1250
Danish	Windows 1252
Dutch Netherland	Windows 1252
Estonian	Windows 1257
Faeroese	Windows 1252
Finnish	Windows 1252
French (France)	Windows 1252
French (Canada) 95/98	Windows 1252
French (Canada) 2000/XP	Windows 1252
French International (Belgian French)	Windows 1252
Galician	Windows 1252
German	Windows 1252
Greek Latin	Windows 1252
Greek220 Latin	Windows 1253
Greek319 Latin	Windows 1252
Greek	Windows 1253
Greek220	Windows 1253
Greek319	Windows 1253
Greek Polytonic	Windows 1253

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
Hebrew Israel	Windows 1255
Hungarian	Windows 1250
Hungarian_101KEY	Windows 1250
Icelandic	Windows 1252
Irish	Windows 1252
Italian	Windows 1252
Italian_142	Windows 1252
Japanese ASCII	Windows 1252
Japanese (Shift-JIS)	Windows 932, Shift-JIS
Kazakh	Windows 1251
Korean ASCII	Windows 1252
Korean (Hangul)	Windows 949, Hangul
Kyrgyz Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Latin America	Windows 1252
Latvian	Windows 1257
Latvian QWERTY	Windows 1257
Lithuanian	Windows 1257
Lithuanian_IBM	Windows 1257
Macedonian -FYROM	Windows 1251
Maltese_47KEY	Windows 1252
Mongolian-Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Norwegian	Windows 1252
Polish_214	Windows 1250
Polish Programmer	Windows 1250
Portuguese Brazil	Windows 1252
Portuguese Brazilian ABNT	Windows 1252
Portuguese Brazilian ABNT2	Windows 1252
Portuguese Portugal	Windows 1252
Romanian	Windows 1250
Romanian Legacy	Windows 1250
Romanian Standard	Windows 1250

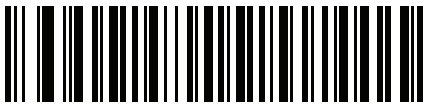
Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
Romanian Programmer	Windows 1250
Russian	Windows 1251
Russian Typewriter	Windows 1251
Serbian Latin	Windows 1250
Serbian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Slovak	Windows 1250
Slovak QWERTY	Windows 1250
Slovenian	Windows 1250
Spanish	Windows 1252
Spanish Variation	Windows 1252
Swedish	Windows 1252
Swiss French	Windows 1252
Swiss German	Windows 1252
Tatar	Windows 1251
Thai-Kedmanee	Windows 874
Turkish F	Windows 1254
Turkish Q	Windows 1254
Ukrainian	Windows 1251
United Kingdom	Windows 1252
United States	Windows 1252
US Dvorak	Windows 1252
US Dvorak Left Hand	Windows 1252
US Dvorak Right Hand	Windows 1252
US International	Windows 1252
Uzbek Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Vietnamese	Windows 1258

Country Code Page Bar Codes

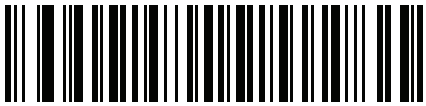
Scan the bar code corresponding to the country keyboard code page.

Windows 1250
Latin 2, Central European



Windows 1251
Cyrillic, Slavic

Windows 1252
Latin 1, Western European



Windows 1253
Greek

Windows 1254
Latin 5, Turkish

Country Code Pages (Continued)

Windows 1255
Hebrew

Windows 1256
Arabic

Windows 1257
Baltic

Windows 1258
Vietnamese

Windows 874
Thai

Country Code Pages (Continued)

Windows 20866
Cyrillic KOI8-R

Windows 932
Japanese Shift-JIS

Windows 936
Simplified Chinese GBK

Windows 54936
Simplified Chinese GB18030

Windows 949
Korean Hangul

Windows 950
Traditional Chinese Big5

Country Code Pages (Continued)

MS-DOS 437
Latin US

MS-DOS 737
Greek

MS-DOS 775
Baltic

MS-DOS 850
Latin 1

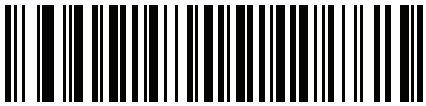
MS-DOS 852
Latin 2

Country Code Pages (Continued)

MS-DOS 855
Cyrillic

MS-DOS 857
Turkish

MS-DOS 860
Portuguese

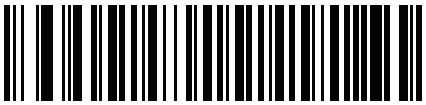


MS-DOS 861
Icelandic

MS-DOS 862
Hebrew

Country Code Pages (Continued)

MS-DOS 863
French Canada



MS-DOS 865
Nordic

MS-DOS 866
Cyrillic

MS-DOS 869
Greek 2

Country Code Pages (Continued)

ISO 8859-1
Latin 1, Western European

ISO 8859-2
Latin 2, Central European

ISO 8859-3
Latin 3, South European

ISO 8859-4
Latin 4, North European

ISO 8859-5
Cyrillic

Country Code Pages (Continued)

ISO 8859-6
Arabic

ISO 8859-7
Greek

ISO 8859-8
Hebrew

ISO 8859-9
Latin 5, Turkish

ISO 8859-10
Latin 6, Nordic

Country Code Pages (Continued)

ISO 8859-11
Thai

ISO 8859-13
Latin 7, Baltic

ISO 8859-14
Latin 8, Celtic

ISO 8859-15
Latin 9

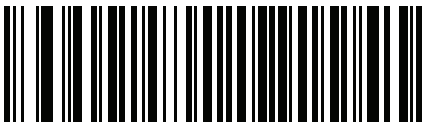
ISO 8859-16
Latin 10, South-Eastern European

Country Code Pages (Continued)

UTF-8

UTF-16LE
UTF-16 Little Endian

UTF-16BE
UTF-16 Big Endian



Mac CP10000
Roman

APPENDIX D CJK DECODE CONTROL

Introduction

This appendix describes control parameters for CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) bar code decode through USB HID Keyboard or Keyboard Wedge modes.

NOTE Because ADF does not support CJK character processing, there is no format manipulation for CJK output.

CJK Control Parameters

Unicode Output Control

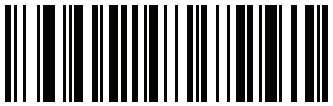
Parameter # 973

For a Unicode encoded CJK bar code, select one of the following options for unicode output:

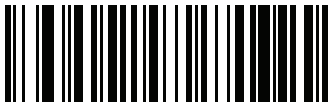
- **Universal Output to Unicode and MBCS Application** - This default method applies to Unicode and MBCS expected applications, such as MS Word and Notepad on a Windows host.

NOTE To support Unicode universal output, set up the registry table for the Windows host. See *Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7*.

- **Output to Unicode Application Only** - This method applies only to Unicode expected applications, such as MS Word and WordPad, but not Notepad.



***Universal Output (0)**



Unicode Application Only (1)

CJK Output Method to Windows Host

Parameter # 972

For a national standard encoded CJK bar code, select one of the following options for CJK output to a Windows host:

- **Universal CJK Output** - This is the default universal CJK output method for US English IME or Chinese/Japanese/Korean ASCII IME on a Windows host. This method converts CJK characters to Unicode and emulates the characters when transmitting to the host. Use the *Unicode Output Control* parameter to control Unicode output.

✓ ***NOTE*** To support universal CJK output, set up the registry table for the Windows host. See *Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7*.

- **Other options for CJK output** - With the following methods, the scanner sends the CJK character hexadecimal internal code (Nei Ma) value to host, or converts the CJK character to Unicode and sends the hexadecimal Unicode value to host. When using these methods, the Windows host must select the corresponding IME to accept the CJK character. See *Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7*.
  - **Japanese Unicode Output**
  - **Simplified Chinese GBK Code Output**
  - **Simplified Chinese Unicode Output**
  - **Korean Unicode Code Output**
  - **Traditional Chinese Big5 Code Output** (Windows XP)
  - **Traditional Chinese Big5 Code Output** (Windows 7)
  - **Traditional Chinese Unicode Code Output** (Windows XP)
  - **Traditional Chinese Unicode Code Output** (Windows 7)

✓ ***NOTE*** The Unicode emulate output method depends on the host system (Windows XP or Windows 7).

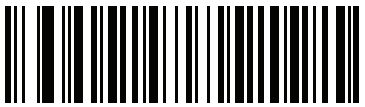
***Universal CJK Output**
(0)

Japanese Unicode Output
(34)

(for Japanese Unicode Output, select Simplified Chinese Unicode IME on the Windows host)

CJK Output Method to Windows Host (continued

Chinese (Simplified) GBK Output
(1)



Chinese (Simplified) Unicode Output
(2)

Korean Unicode Output
(50)

(for Korean Unicode Output, select Simplified Chinese Unicode IME on the Windows host)

Chinese (Traditional) Big5 Output (Windows XP)
(17)

Chinese (Traditional) Big5 Output (Windows 7)
(19)

Chinese (Traditional) Unicode Output (Windows XP)
(18)

Chinese (Traditional) Unicode Output (Windows 7)
(20)

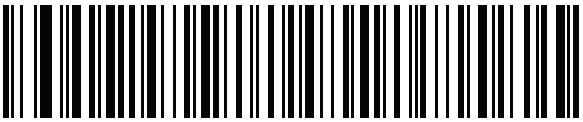
Non-CJK UTF Bar Code Output

Parameter # 960

Some country keyboard type layouts contain characters that do not exist in the default code page (see *Country Keyboard Type Missing Characters on page D-6*). Although the default code page can not encode these characters in a bar code, they can be encoded in the UTF-8 bar code. Scan this parameter bar code to output the Unicode values by emulation mode.

✓ ***NOTE*** Use this special country keyboard type to decode the non-CJK UTF-8 bar code. After decoding, re-configure the scanner to use the original country keyboard type.

Use US English IME on Windows. See *Unicode Output Control on page D-2*.



Non-CJK UTF-8 Emulation Output

Country Keyboard Type Missing Characters

Country keyboard type: **Tatar, Uzbek, Mongolian, Kyrgyz, Kazakh and Azeri**
Default code page: CP1251
Missing characters:

ғ	Ғ
ҳ	Ҳ
қ	Қ
h	h
ө	Ө
ә	Ә
ү	Ү
ң	Ң
җ	Җ
₸	
ң	Ң
ұ	Ұ
қ	Қ
ч	Ч
к	К

Country keyboard type: **Romanian (Standard)**
Default code page: CP1250
Missing characters:

ș	Ș
ț	Ț

Country keyboard type: **Portuguese-Brazilian (ABNT), Portuguese-Brazilian (ABNT2)**
Default code page: CP1252
Missing character: ₢

Country keyboard type: **Azeri-Latin**
Default code page: CP1254
Missing characters: ə, Ə

Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host

This section describes how to set up CJK decode with a Windows host.

Setting Up the Windows Registry Table for Unicode Universal Output

To support the Unicode universal output method, set up the Windows host registry table as follows:

1. Select **Start > Run > regedt32** to start the registry editor.
2. Under **HKEY_Current_User\Control Panel\Input Method**, set **EnableHexNumpad** to **1** as follows:
   [HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Control Panel\Input Method]
   "EnableHexNumpad"="1"
   If this key does not exist, add it as type **REG_SZ** (string value).
3. Reboot the computer to implement the registry change.

Adding CJK IME on Windows

To add the desired CJK input language:

1. Click **Start > Control Panel**.
2. If the Control Panel opens in category view, select **Switch to Classic View** in the top left corner.
3. Select **Regional and Language Options**.
4. Click the **Language** tab.
5. Under **Supplemental Language Support**, select the **Install Files for East Asian Languages** check box if not already selected, and click **Apply**. This may require a Windows installation CD to install the required files. This step ensures that the East Asian Languages (CJK) are available.
6. Under **Text Services and Input Language**, click **Details**.
7. Under **Installed Services**, click **Add**.
8. In the **Add Input Language** dialog box, choose the CJK input language and keyboard layout or Input Method Editor (IME) to add.
9. Click **OK** twice. The language indicator appears in the system tray (at bottom right corner of the desktop by default). To switch between input languages (keyboard languages) select the language indicator in the system tray.
10. Select the language indicator in the system tray to select the desired country keyboard type.
11. Verify that the characters displayed on each country's keyboard appear.

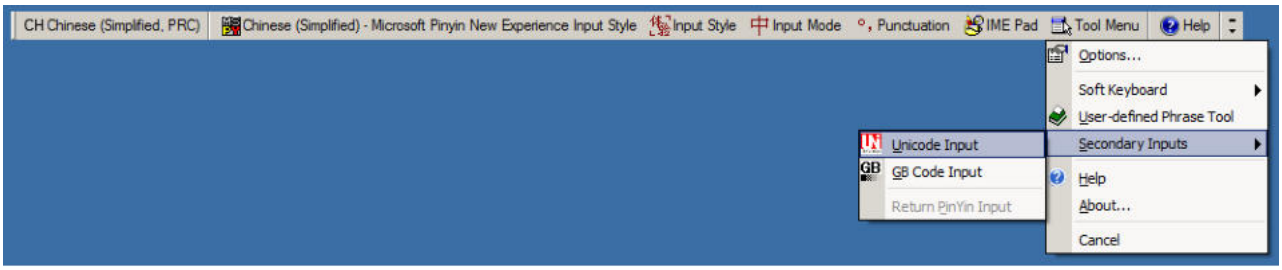
Selecting the Simplified Chinese Input Method on the Host

To select the Simplified Chinese input method:

- Select Unicode/GBK input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Simplified) - NeiMa**, then click the input bar to select **Unicode** or **GBK NeiMa** input.

Or

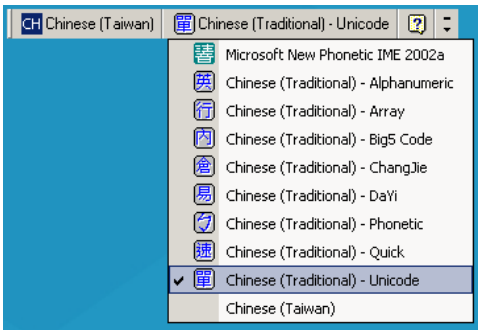
- Select Unicode/GBK input on Windows7: **Chinese (Simplified) - Microsoft Pinyin New Experience Input Style**, then select **Tool Menu > Secondary Inputs > Unicode Input** or **GB Code Input**.



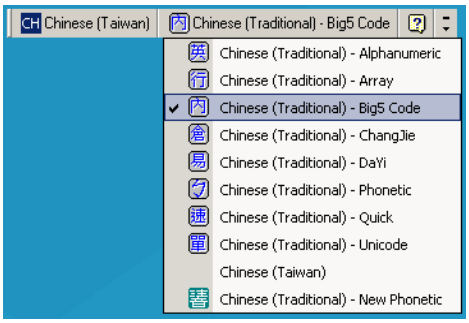
Selecting the Traditional Chinese Input Method on the Host

To select the Traditional Chinese input method:

- Select Unicode input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Traditional) - Unicode**



- Select Big5 input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Traditional) - Big5 Code**



- Select Unicode/Big5 input on Windows 7: **Chinese (Traditional) - New Quick**. This option support both Unicode and Big5 input.

APPENDIX E PROGRAMMING REFERENCE

Symbol Code Identifiers

Table E-1 *Symbol Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	UPC-A, UPC-E, UPC-E1, EAN-8, EAN-13
B	Code 39, Code 32
C	Codabar
D	Code 128, ISBT 128, ISBT 128 Concatenated
E	Code 93
F	Interleaved 2 of 5
G	Discrete 2 of 5, or Discrete 2 of 5 IATA
H	Code 11
J	MSI
K	GS1-128
L	Bookland EAN
M	Trioptic Code 39
N	Coupon Code
R	GS1 DataBar Family
S	Matrix 2 of 5
T	UCC Composite, TLC 39
U	Chinese 2 of 5

Table E-1 *Symbol Code Characters (Continued)*

Code Character	Code Type
V	Korean 3 of 5
X	ISSN EAN, PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
P00	Data Matrix
P01	QR Code, MicroQR
P02	Maxicode
P03	US Postnet
P04	US Planet
P05	Japan Postal
P06	UK Postal
P08	Netherlands KIX Code
P09	Australia Post
P0A	USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail
P0B	UPU FICS Postal
P0C	Mailmark
P0G	GS1 Data Matrix
P0H	Han Xin
P0Q	GS1 QR
P0X	Signature Capture

AIM Code Identifiers

Each AIM Code Identifier contains the three-character string **]cm** where:

] = Flag Character (ASCII 93)
c = Code Character (see *Table E-2*)
m = Modifier Character (see *Table E-3*)

Table E-2 *Aim Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	Code 39, Code 39 Full ASCII, Code 32
C	Code 128, ISBT 128, ISBT 128 Concatenated, GS1-128, Coupon (Code 128 portion)
d	Data Matrix, GS1 Data Matrix
E	UPC/EAN, Coupon (UPC portion)
e	GS1 DataBar Family
F	Codabar
G	Code 93
H	Code 11
h	Han Xin
I	Interleaved 2 of 5
L	PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
L2	TLC 39
M	MSI
Q	QR Code, MicroQR, GS1 QR
S	Discrete 2 of 5, IATA 2 of 5
U	Maxicode
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
X	Bookland EAN, ISSN EAN, Trioptic Code 39, Chinese 2 of 5, Matrix 2 of 5, Korean 3 of 5, US Postnet, US Planet, UK Postal, Japan Postal, Australia Post, Netherlands KIX Code, USPS 4CB/One Code/ Intelligent Mail, UPU FICS Postal, Mailmark, Signature Capture

The modifier character is the sum of the applicable option values based on *Table E-3*.

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
Code 39	0	No check character or Full ASCII processing.
	1	Reader has checked one check character.
	3	Reader has checked and stripped check character.
	4	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion.
	5	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked one check character.
	7	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked and stripped check character.
	Example: A Full ASCII bar code with check character W, **A+I+MI+DW**, is transmitted as **]A7**AIMID where 7 = (3+4).	
Trioptic Code 39	0	No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Trioptic bar code 412356 is transmitted as **]X0**412356	
Code 128	0	Standard data packet, no Function code 1 in first symbol position.
	1	Function code 1 in first symbol character position.
	2	Function code 1 in second symbol character position.
	Example: A Code (EAN) 128 bar code with Function 1 character FNC1 in the first position, AIMID is transmitted as **]C1**AIMID	
I 2 of 5	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has validated check digit.
	3	Reader has validated and stripped check digit.
	Example: An I 2 of 5 bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as **]I0**4123	
Codabar	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has checked check digit.
	3	Reader has stripped check digit before transmission.
	Example: A Codabar bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as **]F0**4123	
Code 93	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Code 93 bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as **]G0**012345678905	
MSI	0	Check digits are sent.
	1	No check digit is sent.
	Example: An MSI bar code 4123, with a single check digit checked, is transmitted as **]M1**4123	

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
D 2 of 5	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A D 2 of 5 bar code 4123, is transmitted as **]S0**4123	
UPC/EAN	0	Standard data packet in full EAN format, i.e. 13 digits for UPC-A, UPC-E, and EAN-13 (not including supplemental data).
	1	Two digit supplemental data only.
	2	Five digit supplemental data only.
	3	Combined data packet comprising 13 digits from EAN-13, UPC-A or UPC-E symbol and 2 or 5 digits from supplemental symbol.
	4	EAN-8 data packet.
	Example: A UPC-A bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as **]E0**0012345678905	
Bookland EAN	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Bookland EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as **]X0**123456789X	
ISSN EAN	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: An ISSN EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as **]X0**123456789X	
Code 11	0	Single check digit
	1	Two check digits
	3	Check characters validated but not transmitted.
GS1 DataBar Family		No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0. GS1 DataBar and GS1 DataBar Limited transmit with an Application Identifier “01”. Note: In GS1-128 emulation mode, GS1 DataBar is transmitted using Code 128 rules (i.e.,]C1).
	Example: A GS1 DataBar bar code 0110012345678902 is transmitted as **]e**00110012345678902.	
EAN.UCC Composites (GS1 DataBar, GS1-128, 2D portion of UPC composite)		Native mode transmission. Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	0	Standard data packet.
	1	Data packet containing the data following an encoded symbol separator character.
	2	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet does not support the ECI protocol.
	3	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet supports the ECI protocol.
		GS1-128 emulation Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	1	Data packet is a GS1-128 symbol (i.e., data is preceded with]JC1).

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
PDF417, Micro PDF417	0	Reader set to conform to protocol defined in 1994 PDF417 symbology specifications. **Note:** When this option is transmitted, the receiver cannot reliably determine whether ECIs have been invoked or whether data byte 92_{DEC} has been doubled in transmission.
	1	Reader set to follow the ECI protocol (Extended Channel Interpretation). All data characters 92_{DEC} are doubled.
	2	Reader set for Basic Channel operation (no escape character transmission protocol). Data characters 92_{DEC} are not doubled. **Note:** When decoders are set to this mode, unbuffered Macro symbols and symbols requiring the decoder to convey ECI escape sequences cannot be transmitted.
	3	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is 903-907, 912, 914, 915.
	4	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 908-909.
	5	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 910-911.
	Example: A PDF417 bar code ABCD, with no transmission protocol enabled, is transmitted as]L2ABCD.	
Data Matrix	0	ECC 000-140, not supported.
	1	ECC 200.
	2	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position.
	3	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position.
	4	ECC 200, ECI protocol implemented.
	5	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position, ECI protocol implemented.
	6	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position, ECI protocol implemented.
GS1 Data Matrix	2	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position.
MaxiCode	0	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5.
	1	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3.
	2	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3, ECI protocol implemented in secondary message.

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
QR Code	0	Model 1 symbol.
	1	Model 2 / MicroQR symbol, ECI protocol not implemented.
	2	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	4	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	5	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
	6	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
GS1 QR	3	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
Aztec	0	Aztec symbol.
	C	Aztec Rune symbol.
Han Xin	0	Generic data, no special features are set. The transmitted data does not follow the AIM ECI protocol.
	1	ECI protocol enabled. There is at least one ECI mode encoded. Transmitted data must follow the AIM ECI protocol.
Mailmark	0	No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0.

APPENDIX F SAMPLE BAR CODES

Code 39

UPC/EAN

UPC-A, 100%

EAN-13, 100%

Code 128

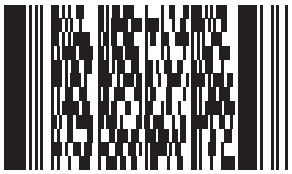
Interleaved 2 of 5

GS1 DataBar-14

NOTE DataBar-14 must be enabled to read the bar code below (see *GS1 DataBar on page 10-77*).

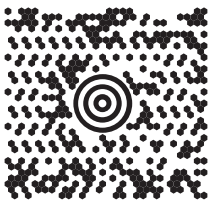
7612341562341

PDF417



Data Matrix

Maxicode



QR Code

Han Xin

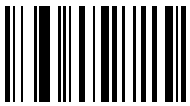
US Postnet

UK Postal

APPENDIX G NUMERIC BAR CODES

Numeric Bar Codes

For parameters requiring specific numeric values, scan the appropriately numbered bar code(s).



0

1

2

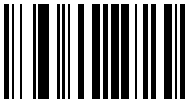
3

4

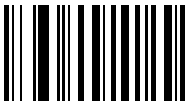
Numeric Bar Codes (continued)

5

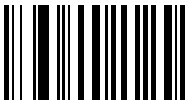
6



7



8



9

Cancel

To correct an error or change a selection, scan the bar code below.

Cancel

APPENDIX H ASCII CHARACTER SETS

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1000	%U	CTRL 2
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/o	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	‘
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	l
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-2 *ALT Key Standard Default Tables*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table H-3 *USB GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table H-3 *USB GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z
Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.	

Table H-4 *PF Key Standard Default Table*

PF Keys	Keystroke
4001	PF 1
4002	PF 2
4003	PF 3
4004	PF 4
4005	PF 5
4006	PF 6
4007	PF 7
4008	PF 8
4009	PF 9
4010	PF 10
4011	PF 11
4012	PF 12
4013	PF 13
4014	PF 14
4015	PF 15
4016	PF 16

Table H-5 *F key Standard Default Table*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F 1
5002	F 2
5003	F 3
5004	F 4
5005	F 5
5006	F 6
5007	F 7
5008	F 8
5009	F 9
5010	F 10
5011	F 11
5012	F 12
5013	F 13
5014	F 14
5015	F 15
5016	F 16
5017	F 17
5018	F 18
5019	F 19
5020	F 20
5021	F 21
5022	F 22
5023	F 23
5024	F 24

Table H-6 *Numeric Key Standard Default Table*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	Undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table H-7 *Extended Keypad Standard Default Table*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

APPENDIX I SIGNATURE CAPTURE CODE

Introduction

CapCode, a signature capture code, is a special pattern that encloses a signature area on a document and allows a scanner to capture a signature.

There are several accepted patterns that allow automatic identification of different signatures on the same form. For example, on the federal tax return 1040 form there are three signature areas, one each for two joint filers, and one for a professional preparer. By using different patterns, a program can correctly identify all three, so they can be captured in any sequence and still be identified correctly.

Code Structure

Signature Capture Area

A CapCode is printed as two identical patterns on either side of a signature capture box, as shown in *Figure I-1*. Each pattern extends the full height of the signature capture box.

The box is optional, so you can omit it, replace it with a single baseline, or print a baseline with an "X" on top of it towards the left, as is customarily done in the US to indicate a request for signature. However, if an "X" or other markings are added in the signature box area, these are captured with the signature.

Figure I-1 *CapCode*

CapCode Pattern Structure

A CapCode pattern structure consists of a start pattern followed by a separator space, a signature capture box, a second separator space, and then a stop pattern. Assuming that X is the dimension of the thinnest element, the start and stop patterns each contains 9X total width in 4 bars and 3 spaces. A 7X quiet zone is required to the left and to the right of the CapCode pattern.

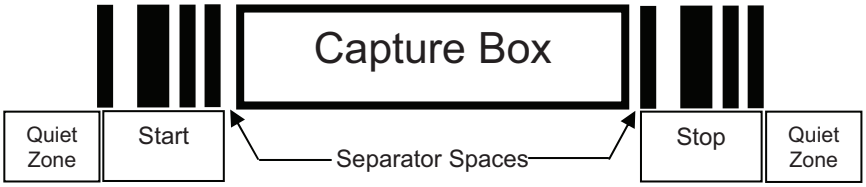


Figure I-2 *CapCode Structure*

The separator spaces on either side of the signature capture box can be between 1X and 3X wide.

Start / Stop Patterns

Table I-1 lists the accepted start / stop patterns. The bar and space widths are expressed as multiples of X. You must use the same pattern on either side of a signature capture box. The type value is reported with the captured signature to indicate the purpose of the signature captured.

Table I-1 *Start / Stop Pattern Definitions*

Bar/Space Patterns							Type
B	S	B	S	B	S	B	
1	1	2	2	1	1	1	2
1	2	2	1	1	1	1	5
2	1	1	2	1	1	1	7
2	2	1	1	1	1	1	8
3	1	1	1	1	1	1	9

Table I-2 lists selectable parameters used to generate the image of the captured signature.

Table I-2 *User Defined CapCode Parameters*

Parameter	Defined
Width	Number of pixels
Height	Number of pixels
Format	JPEG, BMP, TIFF
JPEG quality	1 (most compression) to 100 (best quality)
Bits Per Pixel (not applicable to JPEG format)	1 (2 levels)
	4 (16 levels)
	8 (256 levels)

BMP format does not use compression, JPEG and TIFF formats do.

Dimensions

The size of the signature capture box is determined by the height and separation of the start and stop patterns. The line width of the signature capture box is insignificant.

The thinnest element width, referred to here as X, is nominally 10 mils (1 mil = 0.0254 mm). Select this as an exact multiple of the pixel pitch of the printer used. For example, when using a 203 DPI (dots-per-inch) printer and printing 2 dots per module, the resulting X dimension is 9.85 mils.

Data Format

The scanner output is formatted according to *Table I-3*. Symbol scanners allow different user options to output or inhibit bar code type. Selecting "Symbol ID" as the bar code type for output identifies the CapCode with letter "i".

Table I-3 *Data Format*

File Format (1 byte)	Type (1 byte)	Image Size (4 bytes, BIG Endian)	Image Data
JPEG - 1 BMP - 3 TIFF - 4	See *Table I-1*, last column		(Same bytes as in a data file)

Additional Capabilities

Regardless of how the signature is captured, the output signature image is de-skewed and right-side up.

A scanner that captures signatures automatically determines whether it is scanning a signature or a bar code. You can disable the signature capturing capability in a scanner.

Signature Boxes

Figure I-3 illustrates the five acceptable signature boxes:

Type 2:

Type 5:

Type 7:

Type 8:

Type 9:

Figure I-3 *Acceptable Signature Boxes*

GLOSSARY

A

Aperture. The opening in an optical system defined by a lens or baffle that establishes the field of view.

API. An interface by means of which one software component communicates with or controls another. Usually used to refer to services provided by one software component to another, usually via software interrupts or function calls

Application Programming Interface. See **API**.

ASCII. American Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7 bit-plus-parity code representing 128 letters, numerals, punctuation marks and control characters. It is a standard data transmission code in the U.S.

Autodiscrimination. The ability of an interface controller to determine the code type of a scanned bar code. After this determination is made, the information content is decoded.

B

Bar. The dark element in a printed bar code symbol.

Bar Code. A pattern of variable-width bars and spaces which represents numeric or alphanumeric data in machine-readable form. The general format of a bar code symbol consists of a leading margin, start character, data or message character, check character (if any), stop character, and trailing margin. Within this framework, each recognizable symbology uses its own unique format. See **Symbology**.

Bar Code Density. The number of characters represented per unit of measurement (e.g., characters per inch).

Bar Height. The dimension of a bar measured perpendicular to the bar width.

Bar Width. Thickness of a bar measured from the edge closest to the symbol start character to the trailing edge of the same bar.

BIOS. Basic Input Output System. A collection of ROM-based code with a standard API used to interface with standard PC hardware.

Bit. Binary digit. One bit is the basic unit of binary information. Generally, eight consecutive bits compose one byte of data. The pattern of 0 and 1 values within the byte determines its meaning.

Bits per Second (bps). Bits transmitted or received.

Boot or Boot-up. The process a computer goes through when it starts. During boot-up, the computer can run self-diagnostic tests and configure hardware and software.

BOOTP. A protocol for remote booting of diskless devices. Assigns an IP address to a machine and may specify a boot file. The client sends a bootp request as a broadcast to the bootp server port (67) and the bootp server responds using the bootp client port (68). The bootp server must have a table of all devices, associated MAC addresses and IP addresses.

bps. See **Bits Per Second**.

Byte. On an addressable boundary, eight adjacent binary digits (0 and 1) combined in a pattern to represent a specific character or numeric value. Bits are numbered from the right, 0 through 7, with bit 0 the low-order bit. One byte in memory is used to store one ASCII character.

C

CDRH. Center for Devices and Radiological Health. A federal agency responsible for regulating laser product safety. This agency specifies various laser operation classes based on power output during operation.

CDRH Class 1. This is the lowest power CDRH laser classification. This class is considered intrinsically safe, even if all laser output were directed into the eye's pupil. There are no special operating procedures for this class.

CDRH Class 2. No additional software mechanisms are needed to conform to this limit. Laser operation in this class poses no danger for unintentional direct human exposure.

Character. A pattern of bars and spaces which either directly represents data or indicates a control function, such as a number, letter, punctuation mark, or communications control contained in a message.

Character Set. Those characters available for encoding in a particular bar code symbology.

Check Digit. A digit used to verify a correct symbol decode. The scanner inserts the decoded data into an arithmetic formula and checks that the resulting number matches the encoded check digit. Check digits are required for UPC but are optional for other symbologies. Using check digits decreases the chance of substitution errors when a symbol is decoded.

Codabar. A discrete self-checking code with a character set consisting of digits 0 to 9 and six additional characters: (- $: / , +).

Code 128. A high density symbology which allows the controller to encode all 128 ASCII characters without adding extra symbol elements.

Code 3 of 9 (Code 39). A versatile and widely used alphanumeric bar code symbology with a set of 43 character types, including all uppercase letters, numerals from 0 to 9 and 7 special characters (- . / + % $ and space). The code name is derived from the fact that 3 of 9 elements representing a character are wide, while the remaining 6 are narrow.

Code 93. An industrial symbology compatible with Code 39 but offering a full character ASCII set and a higher coding density than Code 39.

Code Length. Number of data characters in a bar code between the start and stop characters, not including those characters.

Cold Boot. A cold boot restarts the mobile computer and erases all user stored records and entries.

COM port. Communication port; ports are identified by number, e.g., COM1, COM2.

Continuous Code. A bar code or symbol in which all spaces within the symbol are parts of characters. There are no intercharacter gaps in a continuous code. The absence of gaps allows for greater information density.

Cradle. A cradle is used for charging the terminal battery and for communicating with a host computer, and provides a storage place for the terminal when not in use.

D

Dead Zone. An area within a scanner's field of view, in which specular reflection may prevent a successful decode.

Decode. To recognize a bar code symbology (e.g., UPC/EAN) and then analyze the content of the specific bar code scanned.

Decode Algorithm. A decoding scheme that converts pulse widths into data representation of the letters or numbers encoded within a bar code symbol.

Decryption. Decryption is the decoding and unscrambling of received encrypted data. Also see, **Encryption** and **Key**.

Depth of Field. The range between minimum and maximum distances at which a scanner can read a symbol with a certain minimum element width.

Discrete 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing each character by a group of five bars, two of which are wide. The location of wide bars in the group determines which character is encoded; spaces are insignificant. Only numeric characters (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

Discrete Code. A bar code or symbol in which the spaces between characters (intercharacter gaps) are not part of the code.

DRAM. Dynamic random access memory.

E

EAN. European Article Number. This European/International version of the UPC provides its own coding format and symbology standards. Element dimensions are specified metrically. EAN is used primarily in retail.

Element. Generic term for a bar or space.

Encoded Area. Total linear dimension occupied by all characters of a code pattern, including start/stop characters and data.

ENQ (RS-232). ENQ software handshaking is also supported for the data sent to the host.

ESD. Electro-Static Discharge

F

Flash Disk. An additional megabyte of non-volatile memory for storing application and configuration files.

Flash Memory. Flash memory is responsible for storing the system firmware and is non-volatile. If the system power is interrupted the data is not be lost.

FTP. See **File Transfer Protocol**.

H

Hard Reset. See **Cold Boot**.

Host Computer. A computer that serves other terminals in a network, providing such services as computation, database access, supervisory programs and network control.

Hz. Hertz; A unit of frequency equal to one cycle per second.

I

IDE. Intelligent drive electronics. Refers to the solid-state hard drive type.

IEC. International Electrotechnical Commission. This international agency regulates laser safety by specifying various laser operation classes based on power output during operation.

IEC60825-1 Class 1. This is the lowest power IEC laser classification. Conformity is ensured through a software restriction of 120 seconds of laser operation within any 1000 second window and an automatic laser shutdown if the scanner's oscillating mirror fails.

IEEE Address. See **MAC Address**.

Input/Output Ports. I/O ports are primarily dedicated to passing information into or out of the terminal's memory. Series 9000 mobile computers include Serial and USB ports.

Intercharacter Gap. The space between two adjacent bar code characters in a discrete code.

Interleaved 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing character pairs in groups of five bars and five interleaved spaces. Interleaving provides for greater information density. The location of wide elements (bar/spaces) within each group determines which characters are encoded. This continuous code type uses no intercharacter spaces. Only numeric (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

Interleaved Bar Code. A bar code in which characters are paired together, using bars to represent the first character and the intervening spaces to represent the second.

Interleaved 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing character pairs in groups of five bars and five interleaved spaces. Interleaving provides for greater information density. The location of wide elements (bar/spaces) within each group determines which characters are encoded. This continuous code type uses no intercharacter spaces. Only numeric (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

I/O Ports. interface The connection between two devices, defined by common physical characteristics, signal characteristics, and signal meanings. Types of interfaces include RS-232 and PCMCIA.

IOCTL. Input/Output Control.

IP Address. (Internet Protocol address) The address of a computer attached to an IP network. Every client and server station must have a unique IP address. A 32-bit address used by a computer on a IP network. Client workstations have either a permanent address or one that is dynamically assigned to them each session. IP addresses are written as four sets of numbers separated by periods; for example, 204.171.64.2.

IPX/SPX. Internet Package Exchange/Sequential Packet Exchange. A communications protocol for Novell. IPX is Novell's Layer 3 protocol, similar to XNS and IP, and used in NetWare networks. SPX is Novell's version of the Xerox SPP protocol.

IS-95. Interim Standard 95. The EIA/TIA standard that governs the operation of CDMA cellular service. Versions include IS-95A and IS-95B. See CDMA.

K

Key. A key is the specific code used by the algorithm to encrypt or decrypt the data. Also see, **Encryption** and **Decrypting**.

L

LASER. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation.The laser is an intense light source. Light from a laser is all the same frequency, unlike the output of an incandescent bulb. Laser light is typically coherent and has a high energy density.

Laser Diode. A gallium-arsenide semiconductor type of laser connected to a power source to generate a laser beam. This laser type is a compact source of coherent light.

Laser Scanner. A type of bar code reader that uses a beam of laser light.

LCD. See **Liquid Crystal Display**.

LED Indicator. A semiconductor diode (LED - Light Emitting Diode) used as an indicator, often in digital displays. The semiconductor uses applied voltage to produce light of a certain frequency determined by the semiconductor's particular chemical composition.

Light Emitting Diode. See **LED**.

Liquid Crystal Display (LCD). A display that uses liquid crystal sealed between two glass plates. The crystals are excited by precise electrical charges, causing them to reflect light outside according to their bias. They use little electricity and react relatively quickly. They require external light to reflect their information to the user.

M

MIL. 1 mil = 1 thousandth of a meter.

Misread (Misdecode). A condition which occurs when the data output of a reader or interface controller does not agree with the data encoded within a bar code symbol.

N

Nominal. The exact (or ideal) intended value for a specified parameter. Tolerances are specified as positive and negative deviations from this value.

Nominal Size. Standard size for a bar code symbol. Most UPC/EAN codes are used over a range of magnifications (e.g., from 0.80 to 2.00 of nominal).

NVM. Non-Volatile Memory.

O

ODI. See **Open Data-Link Interface**.

Open Data-Link Interface (ODI). Novell's driver specification for an interface between network hardware and higher-level protocols. It supports multiple protocols on a single NIC (Network Interface Controller). It is capable of understanding and translating any network information or request sent by any other ODI-compatible protocol into something a NetWare client can understand and process.

Open System Authentication. Open System authentication is a null authentication algorithm.

P

PAN . Personal area network. Using Bluetooth wireless technology, PANs enable devices to communicate wirelessly. Generally, a wireless PAN consists of a dynamic group of less than 255 devices that communicate within about a 33-foot range. Only devices within this limited area typically participate in the network.

Parameter. A variable that can have different values assigned to it.

PC Card. A plug-in expansion card for laptop computers and other devices, also called a PCMCIA card. PC Cards are 85.6mm long x 54 mm wide, and have a 68 pin connector. There are several different kinds:

- Type I; 3.3 mm high; use - RAM or Flash RAM
- Type II; 5 mm high; use - modems, LAN adaptors
- Type III; 10.5 high; use - Hard Disks

PCMCIA. Personal Computer Memory Card Interface Association. See **PC Card**.

Percent Decode. The average probability that a single scan of a bar code would result in a successful decode. In a well-designed bar code scanning system, that probability should approach near 100%.

PING. (Packet Internet Groper) An Internet utility used to determine whether a particular IP address is online. It is used to test and debug a network by sending out a packet and waiting for a response.

Presentation Mode. Typically used when the digital scanner sits on a countertop or is mounted on a wall, in this mode, the digital scanner operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

Print Contrast Signal (PCS). Measurement of the contrast (brightness difference) between the bars and spaces of a symbol. A minimum PCS value is needed for a bar code symbol to be scannable. PCS = (RL - RD) / RL, where RL is the reflectance factor of the background and RD the reflectance factor of the dark bars.

Programming Mode. The state in which a scanner is configured for parameter values. See **Scanning Mode**.

Q

Quiet Zone. A clear space, containing no dark marks, which precedes the start character of a bar code symbol and follows the stop character.

QWERTY. A standard keyboard commonly used on North American and some European PC keyboards. “QWERTY” refers to the arrangement of keys on the left side of the third row of keys.

R

RAM. Random Access Memory. Data in RAM can be accessed in random order, and quickly written and read.

Reflectance. Amount of light returned from an illuminated surface.

Resolution. The narrowest element dimension which is distinguished by a particular reading device or printed with a particular device or method.

RF. Radio Frequency.

ROM. Read-Only Memory. Data stored in ROM cannot be changed or removed.

Router. A device that connects networks and supports the required protocols for packet filtering. Routers are typically used to extend the range of cabling and to organize the topology of a network into subnets. See **Subnet**.

RS-232. An Electronic Industries Association (EIA) standard that defines the connector, connector pins, and signals used to transfer data serially from one device to another.

S

Scan Area. Area intended to contain a symbol.

Scanner. An electronic device used to scan bar code symbols and produce a digitized pattern that corresponds to the bars and spaces of the symbol. Its three main components are: 1) Light source (laser or photoelectric cell) - illuminates a bar code,; 2) Photodetector - registers the difference in reflected light (more light reflected from spaces); 3) Signal conditioning circuit - transforms optical detector output into a digitized bar pattern.

Scanning Mode. The scanner is energized, programmed and ready to read a bar code.

Scanning Sequence. A method of programming or configuring parameters for a bar code reading system by scanning bar code menus.

SDK. Software Development Kit

Self-Checking Code. A symbology that uses a checking algorithm to detect encoding errors within the characters of a bar code symbol.

Shared Key. Shared Key authentication is an algorithm where both the AP and the MU share an authentication key.

SHIP. Symbol Host Interface Program.

SID. System Identification code. An identifier issued by the FCC for each market. It is also broadcast by the cellular carriers to allow cellular devices to distinguish between the home and roaming service.

Soft Reset. See **Warm Boot**.

Space. The lighter element of a bar code formed by the background between bars.

Specular Reflection. The mirror-like direct reflection of light from a surface, which can cause difficulty decoding a bar code.

Standard Trigger Mode. The digital scanner uses this mode when lifted off the counter or removed from the wall mount. In this mode, aim the digital scanner at a bar code and pull the trigger to decode.

Start/Stop Character. A pattern of bars and spaces that provides the scanner with start and stop reading instructions and scanning direction. The start and stop characters are normally to the left and right margins of a horizontal code.

STEP. Symbol Terminal Enabler Program.

Subnet. A subset of nodes on a network that are serviced by the same router. See **Router**.

Subnet Mask. A 32-bit number used to separate the network and host sections of an IP address. A custom subnet mask subdivides an IP network into smaller subsections. The mask is a binary pattern that is matched up with the IP address to turn part of the host ID address field into a field for subnets. Default is often 255.255.255.0.

Substrate. A foundation material on which a substance or image is placed.

SVTP. Symbol Virtual Terminal Program.

Symbol. A scannable unit that encodes data within the conventions of a certain symbology, usually including start/stop characters, quiet zones, data characters and check characters.

Symbol Aspect Ratio. The ratio of symbol height to symbol width.

Symbol Height. The distance between the outside edges of the quiet zones of the first row and the last row.

Symbol Length. Length of symbol measured from the beginning of the quiet zone (margin) adjacent to the start character to the end of the quiet zone (margin) adjacent to a stop character.

Symbology. The structural rules and conventions for representing data within a particular bar code type (e.g. UPC/EAN, Code 39, PDF417, etc.).

T

TCP/IP. (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) A communications protocol used to internetwork dissimilar systems. This standard is the protocol of the Internet and has become the global standard for communications. TCP provides transport functions, which ensures that the total amount of bytes sent is received correctly at the other end. UDP is an alternate transport that does not guarantee delivery. It is widely used for real-time voice and video transmissions where erroneous packets are not retransmitted. IP provides the routing mechanism. TCP/IP is a routable protocol, which means that all messages contain not only the address of the destination station, but the address of a destination network. This allows TCP/IP messages to be sent to multiple networks within an organization or around the world, hence its use in the worldwide Internet. Every client and server in a TCP/IP network requires an IP address, which is either permanently assigned or dynamically assigned at startup.

Telnet. A terminal emulation protocol commonly used on the Internet and TCP/IP-based networks. It allows a user at a terminal or computer to log onto a remote device and run a program.

Terminal Emulation. A “terminal emulation” emulates a character-based mainframe session on a remote non-mainframe terminal, including all display features, commands and function keys. The VC5000 Series supports Terminal Emulations in 3270, 5250 and VT220.

Terminate and Stay Resident (TSR). A program under DOS that ends its foreground execution to remain resident in memory to service hardware/software interrupts, providing background operation. It remains in memory and may provide services on behalf of other DOS programs.

TFTP. (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) A version of the TCP/IP FTP (File Transfer Protocol) protocol that has no directory or password capability. It is the protocol used for upgrading firmware, downloading software and remote booting of diskless devices.

Tolerance. Allowable deviation from the nominal bar or space width.

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. See **TCP/IP.**

Trivial File Transfer Protocol. See **TFTP.**

TSR. See **Terminate and Stay Resident**.

U

UDP. User Datagram Protocol. A protocol within the IP protocol suite that is used in place of TCP when a reliable delivery is not required. For example, UDP is used for real-time audio and video traffic where lost packets are simply

ignored, because there is no time to retransmit. If UDP is used and a reliable delivery is required, packet sequence checking and error notification must be written into the applications.

UPC. Universal Product Code. A relatively complex numeric symbology. Each character consists of two bars and two spaces, each of which is any of four widths. The standard symbology for retail food packages in the United States.

V

Visible Laser Diode (VLD). A solid state device which produces visible laser light.

W

Warm Boot. A warm boot restarts the mobile computer by closing all running programs. All data that is not saved to flash memory is lost.

INDEX

Numerics

123Scan 11-1
2D bar codes
  aztec 10-90
  aztec inverse 10-90
  code 128 emulation 10-85
  data matrix 10-86
  data matrix GS1 10-87
  data matrix inverse 10-86
  GS1 QR 10-88
  han xin 10-91
  han xin inverse 10-91
  maxicode 10-87
  microPDF417 10-84
  microQR 10-89
  PDF417 10-84
  QR code 10-88

A

AAMVA
  field parsing bar codes 12-7
accessories 1-8
  interface cable 1-8
  optional 1-8
  power supply 1-8
ADF . . . . . xvii, 11-4
advanced data formatting . . . . . xvii, 11-4
aiming options
  momentary trigger mode timeout 4-16
  presentation aiming pattern 4-15
  snapshot aiming pattern 5-6
  snapshot mode timeout 5-6
  trigger aiming pattern 4-14
aiming pattern 2-7, 5-6
  enabling in presentation mode 4-15
  enabling in trigger mode 4-14
  momentary trigger mode timeout 4-16
  orientation 2-7
ASCII values
  keyboard wedge 9-12
  RS-232 7-19
  USB 6-19

B

bar codes
  AAMVA field parsing 12-7
  abort macro PDF entry 10-97
  Australia post 10-73
  Australia post format 10-74
  aztec 10-90
  aztec inverse 10-90
  beep after good decode 4-5
  beeper tone 4-6
  beeper volume 4-7, 4-9
  beeper volume adjustment 4-8
  bits per pixel 5-15, 5-18
  bookland EAN 10-11
  bookland ISBN 10-12
  buffering 10-41
  cancel G-2
  Chinese 2 of 5 10-64
  codabar 10-57
  codabar CLSI editing 10-59
  codabar lengths 10-58
  codabar NOTIS editing 10-59
  codabar start and stop characters 10-60
  code 11 10-45
  code 11 check digit verification 10-47
  code 11 check digits 10-48
  code 11 lengths 10-46
  code 128 10-27

code 128 emulation 10-85
code 128 lengths 10-28
code 128 reduced quiet zone 10-33
code 128 security level 10-32
code 39 10-34
code 39 check digit verification 10-37
code 39 full ASCII 10-38
code 39 lengths 10-36
code 39 reduced quiet zone 10-40
code 39 security level 10-39
code 39 transmit check digit 10-37
code 93 10-43
code 93 lengths 10-44
composite beep mode 10-83
composite CC-A/B 10-81
composite CC-C 10-81
composite TLC-39 10-82
continuous bar code read 4-24
convert code 39 to code 32 10-35
convert GS1 databar to UPC/EAN 10-80
convert UPC-E to UPC-A 10-23
convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A 10-23
country code page defaults C-1
country code pages C-5
country codes B-2
coupon report 10-25
crop to address 5-8
D 2 of 5 10-55
D 2 of 5 lengths 10-55
data matrix 10-86
data matrix inverse 10-86
decode mirror images 4-27
decode session timeout 4-25
disable all code types 10-8
driver's license date format 12-18
  no separator 12-19
driver's license gender format 12-17
driver's license parsing 12-2
  send control characters 12-20
  send keyboard characters 12-24
  set defaults 12-17
  set up 12-4, 12-5, 12-6
EAN zero extend 10-24
EAN-13/JAN-13 10-11
EAN-8/JAN-8 10-10
flush macro buffer 10-97
FN1 substitution values 4-43
fuzzy 1D processing 4-26
GS1 data matrix 10-87
GS1 databar 10-77
GS1 databar expanded 10-80
GS1 databar limited 10-78
GS1 databar limited security level 10-79
GS1 QR 10-88
GS1-128 10-29
GS1-128 emulation mode 10-83
han xin 10-91
han xin inverse 10-91
I 2 of 5 10-49
I 2 of 5 check digit verification 10-51
I 2 of 5 convert to EAN-13 10-52
I 2 of 5 lengths 10-49
I 2 of 5 reduced quiet zone 10-54
I 2 of 5 security level 10-53
I 2 of 5 transmit check digit 10-51
IBM 468X/469X
  convert unknown to code 39 8-5
  default parameters 8-3
  ignore beep directive 8-5
  ignore configuration directive 8-6
  port address 8-4
ignore code 128 fnc4 10-33
illumination 4-18, 5-5
illumination always on 4-19
illumination control 4-20
image brightness (target white) 5-10
image cropping 5-7
image enhancement 5-12
image file format 5-13, 5-17
image resolution 5-9
image rotation 5-14
intercharacter gap size 10-96
interleaved 2 of 5
  convert to EAN-13 10-52
inverse 1D 10-69
ISBT 128 10-29
ISBT concatenation 10-30, 10-31
ISBT concatenation redundancy 10-31
ISSN EAN 10-26
Japan postal 10-72
JPEG image options 5-10
JPEG quality and size 5-11
JPEG target file size 5-11
keyboard wedge
  alternate numeric keypad emulation 9-6
  caps lock override 9-8
  default table 9-3
  host types 9-4
  ignore unknown characters 9-5
  intra-keystroke delay 9-6
  keystroke delay 9-5
  quick keypad emulation 9-7
  simulated caps lock 9-7
Korean 3 of 5 10-68
low power mode 4-10
mailmark 10-76
matrix 2 of 5 10-65
matrix 2 of 5 check digit 10-67

matrix 2 of 5 lengths 10-66
maxicode 10-87
microPDF417 10-84
microQR 10-89
mobile phone/display mode 4-28
momentary trigger mode timeout 4-16
motion detect range 4-17
MSI 10-61
MSI check digit algorithm 10-64
MSI check digits 10-63
MSI lengths 10-61
MSI transmit check digit 10-63
multicode mode 4-30, 4-31
Netherlands KIX code 10-75
numeric bar codes G-2
parameter scanning 4-5
parser version ID 12-16
PDF prioritization 4-29
PDF prioritization timeout 4-29
PDF417 10-84
picklist modes 4-23
post decode illumination 4-18
postal 10-70
prefix/suffix values 4-41
presentation aiming pattern 4-15
presentation mode field of view 4-22
QR code 10-88
quiet zone level 10-95
redundancy level 10-92
report version 10-96
RS-232
  baud rate 7-8
  beep on bel 7-16
  check receive errors 7-11
  data bits 7-10
  default table 7-3
  hardware handshaking 7-11, 7-12
  host serial response timeout 7-15
  host types 7-6
  intercharacter delay 7-17
  parity 7-9
  RTS line state 7-16
  software handshaking 7-13, 7-14
  stop bits 7-10
samples F-1
scan data options 4-42
security level 10-94
set defaults 4-4
signature capture 5-16
signature capture height 5-19
signature capture JPEG quality 5-19
signature capture width 5-19
snapshot aiming pattern 5-6
snapshot mode timeout 5-6
supplemental AIM ID format 10-17
supplemental redundancy 10-16
supplementals 10-13
suppress power-up beeps 4-9
symbologies
  default table 10-2
time delay to low power mode 4-11
timeout between decodes, different symbols . . 4-26
timeout between decodes, same symbol 4-25
transmit code ID character 4-40
transmit matrix 2 of 5 check digit 10-67
transmit no read message 4-44
transmit UK postal check digit 10-72
transmit US postal check digit 10-71
trigger aiming pattern 4-14
trigger modes 4-13
trioptic code 39 10-34
UCC coupon extended code 10-24
UK postal 10-71
unicode output control D-2
unique bar code reporting 4-24
UPC composite mode 10-82
UPC reduced quiet zone 10-18
UPC/EAN
  coupon code 10-24
UPC-A 10-9
UPC-A check digit 10-18
UPC-A preamble 10-20
UPC-E 10-9
UPC-E check digit 10-19
UPC-E preamble 10-21
UPC-E1 10-10
UPC-E1 check digit 10-19
UPC-E1 preamble 10-22
UPU FICS postal 10-76
US planet 10-70
US postnet 10-70
USB
  bar code configuration directive 6-10
  beep directive 6-10
  caps lock override 6-8
  CDC beep on bel 6-14
  convert case 6-13
  convert unknown to code 39 6-9
  country keyboard types (country codes) B-2
  default table 6-3
  device type 6-5
  direct I/O beep 6-14
  emulate keypad 6-11
  emulate keypad with leading zero 6-11
  function key mapping 6-12
  IBM specification version 6-18
  keyboard FN 1 substitution 6-12
  keystroke delay 6-7

polling interval 6-15, 6-16
quick keypad emulation 6-17
simulated caps lock 6-8
SNAPI handshaking 6-7
static CDC 6-13
transmission speed 6-15
unknown characters 6-9
USB fast HID 6-17
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail 10-75
beeper
beep after good decode 4-5
definitions 2-2
duration 4-9
suppress power-up beeps 4-9
tone 4-6
volume 4-7
volume adjustment 4-8

C

cables
installing 1-3
interface 1-8
removing 1-3
signal descriptions 3-7
character sets
keyboard wedge 9-12
RS-232 7-19
USB 6-19
Chinese 2 of 5 bar codes 10-64
CJK D-1
codabar bar codes 10-57
CLSI editing 10-59
lengths 10-58
NOTIS editing 10-59
start and stop characters 10-60
code 11 bar codes
check digit verification 10-47
check digits 10-48
code 11 10-45
lengths 10-46
code 128 bar codes
code 128 10-27
GS1-128 10-29
ignore fnc4 10-33
ISBT 128 10-29
ISBT concatenation 10-30, 10-31
ISBT concatenation redundancy 10-31
lengths 10-28
reduced quiet zone 10-33
security level 10-32
code 128 emulation bar codes 10-85
code 39 bar codes
buffering 10-41
check digit verification 10-37
code 39 10-34
code 39 security Level 10-39
convert code 39 to code 32 10-35
full ASCII 10-38
lengths 10-36
reduced quiet zone 10-40
transmit check digit 10-37
trioptic code 39 10-34
code 93 bar codes
code 93 10-43
lengths 10-44
code ID character 4-40
code identifiers
AIM code IDs E-3
modifier characters E-4
Symbol E-1
composite bar codes
beep mode 10-83
composite CC-A/B 10-81
composite CC-C 10-81
composite TLC-39 10-82
GS1-128 emulation mode 10-83
UPC composite mode 10-82
configuration 1-3
connecting
IBM 468X/469X interface 8-2
interface cable 1-3
keyboard wedge interface 9-2
power 1-3
RS-232 interface 7-2
USB interface 6-2
conventions
notational xvii
country code page defaults C-1
country code pages C-5
country codes B-2
cropping 5-7, 5-8

D

D 2 of 5 bar codes 10-55
lengths 10-55
data matrix bar codes 10-86
decode ranges 2-8
default parameters
IBM 468X/469X 8-3
imaging preferences 5-2
keyboard wedge 9-3
RS-232 7-3
standard default table A-1
symbologies 10-2
USB 6-3
user preferences 4-2

desk mounting 1-5
driver's license
ADF parsing sample 12-43
date format 12-18
no separator 12-19
field parsing bar codes 12-4, 12-5, 12-6
gender format 12-17
parsing bar codes 12-2
parsing rule example 12-39

E

EAS 1-8
electronic article surveillance 1-8
exposure options
illumination 4-18, 5-5
presentation mode field of view 4-22

G

GS1 data 3-5
GS1 databar 10-77
GS1 databar bar codes
convert GS1 databar to UPC/EAN 10-80
expanded 10-80
limited 10-78
security level 10-79

H

host types
keyboard wedge 9-4
RS-232 7-6

I

I 2 of 5 bar codes 10-49
check digit verification 10-51
convert to EAN-13 10-52
lengths 10-49
reduced quiet zone 10-54
security level 10-53
transmit check digit 10-51
IBM 468X/469X
connection 8-2
default parameters 8-3
parameters 8-4
illumination 4-18, 5-5
illumination always on 4-19
illumination control 4-20
post decode 4-18
image brightness (target white) 5-10
image cropping 5-7, 5-8
image enhancement 5-12
image options
bits per pixel 5-15
cropping 5-7, 5-8
file formats 5-13, 5-17
image brightness (target white) 5-10
image enhancement 5-12
image resolution 5-9
image rotation 5-14
JPEG image options 5-10
JPEG size/quality 5-11
JPEG target file size 5-11
image resolution 5-9
imaging preferences parameters 5-2
interfaces 1-2

J

JPEG image options 5-10
size/quality 5-11
JPEG target file size 5-11

K

keyboard types (country codes)
Albanian B-2
Arabic (101) B-2
Arabic (102) B-2
Arabic (102) Azerty B-3
Azeri (Cyrillic) B-3
Azeri (Latin) B-3
Belarusian B-3
Bosnian (Cyrillic) B-3
Bosnian (Latin) B-3
Bulgarian (Latin) B-3
Bulgarian Cyrillic (Typewriter) B-4
Canadian French (Legacy) B-4
Canadian French Win7 . . . . . B-4
Canadian Multilingual Standard B-4
Chinese (ASCII) B-4
Croatian B-5
Czech B-5
Czech (Programmer) B-5
Czech (QWERTY) B-5
Danish B-5
Dutch (Netherlands) B-6
Estonian B-6
Faeroese B-6
Finnish B-6
French (Canada) 2000/XP B-7
French (Canada) 95/98 . . . . . B-6
French (France) B-6
French International B-6
Galician B-7
German B-7

Greek B-7
Greek (220) Latin B-7
Greek (319) Latin B-7
Greek 220 . . . . . B-8
Greek 319 . . . . . B-8
Greek Latin B-7
Greek Polytonic B-8
Hebrew Israel B-8
Hungarian B-8
Hungarian_101KEY B-8
Irish B-9
Islandic B-8
Italian B-9
Italian (142) B-9
Japanese (ASCII) B-9
Kazakh B-9
Korean (ASCII) B-9, B-10
Kyrgyz B-10
Latin American B-10
Latvian B-10
Latvian (QWERTY) B-10
Lithuanian B-10
Lithuanian (IBM) B-10
Macedonian (FYROM) B-11
Maltese_47KEY B-11
Mongolian B-11
Norwegian B-11
Polish (214) B-11
Polish (Programmer) B-11
Portuguese (Brazil) B-11
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT) B-12
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT2) B-12
Portuguese (Portugal) B-12
Romanian B-12
Romanian (Legacy) B-12
Romanian (Programmer) B-13
Romanian (Standard) B-12
Russian B-13
Russian (Typewriter) B-13
Serbian (Cyrillic) B-13
Serbian (Latin) B-13
Slovak B-13
Slovak (QWERTY) B-14
Slovenian B-14
Spanish B-14
Spanish (Variation) B-14
Swedish B-14
Swiss French B-14
Swiss German B-14
Tatar B-15
Thai (Kedmanee) B-15
Turkish F B-15
Turkish Q B-15
UK English B-15
Ukranian B-15
US Dvorak B-15
US Dvorak Left B-16
US Dvorak Right B-16
US English B-2
US International B-16
Uzbek B-16
Vietnamese B-16
keyboard wedge
connection 9-2
default parameters 9-3
parameters 9-4
Korean 3 of 5 bar codes 10-68

L

LED definitions 2-4

M

macro PDF 10-97
abort entry 10-97
flush buffer 10-97
maintenance 3-1
matrix 2 of 5 bar codes 10-65
check digit 10-67
lengths 10-66
transmit check digit 10-67
maxicode bar codes 10-87
microPDF417 bar codes 10-84
mounting
desk mount 1-5
locking mount 1-6
templates 1-9
wall mount 1-4
MSI bar codes 10-61
check digit algorithm 10-64
check digits 10-63
lengths 10-61
transmit check digit 10-63

N

notational conventions xvii

P

parser version ID 12-16
parsing
driver's license data 12-1
parts 2-1
PDF417 bar codes 10-84
PDF prioritization 4-29
pinouts

scanner signal descriptions . . . 3-7
plural stage . . . xvii
postal codes . . . 10-70
Australia post . . . 10-73
Australia post format . . . 10-74
Japan postal . . . 10-72
mailmark . . . 10-76
Netherlands KIX code . . . 10-75
transmit UK postal check digit . . . 10-72
transmit US postal check digit . . . 10-71
UK postal . . . 10-71
UPU FICS postal . . . 10-76
US planet . . . 10-70
US postnet . . . 10-70
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail . . . 10-75
power supply . . . 1-8
connecting . . . 1-3
presentation mode field of view . . . 4-22

Q

QR code bar codes . . . 10-88

R

RS-232
connection . . . 7-2
default parameters . . . 7-3
parameters . . . 7-4, 7-6

S

sample bar codes . . . F-1
scanner control app . . . 11-4
scanning
aiming . . . 2-7
errors . . . 4-2, 5-2, 10-2
hand-held . . . 2-5
presentation mode . . . 2-5
sequence example . . . 4-2, 5-2, 10-1
security bar codes
intercharacter gap size . . . 10-96
quiet zone level . . . 10-95
redundancy level . . . 10-92
security level . . . 10-94
service information . . . xviii
setup
configuring . . . 1-3
connecting a USB interface . . . 6-2
connecting an RS-232 interface . . . 7-2
connecting keyboard wedge interface . . . 9-2
connecting power . . . 1-3
connecting to an IBM 468X/469X host . . . 8-2
installing interface cable . . . 1-3
locking mount bracket . . . 1-6
mounting . . . 1-4, 1-5
mounting templates . . . 1-9
unpacking . . . 1-2
signal descriptions . . . 3-7
signature capture . . . 5-16
bits per pixel . . . 5-18
file format selector . . . 5-17
height . . . 5-19
JPEG quality . . . 5-19
width . . . 5-19
snapshot mode timeout . . . 5-6
software tools
123Scan . . . 11-1
ADF . . . 11-4
scanner control app . . . 11-4
specifications . . . 3-5
standard default parameters . . . A-1
support . . . xviii
symbology default parameters . . . 10-2

T

technical specifications . . . 3-5
transmission speed
USB . . . 6-15
trigger
mode . . . 4-13
troubleshooting . . . 3-2

U

unicode
output control . . . D-2
unpacking . . . 1-2
UPC/EAN bar codes
bookland EAN . . . 10-11
bookland ISBN . . . 10-12
convert UPC-E to UPC-A . . . 10-23
convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A . . . 10-23
coupon report . . . 10-25
EAN zero extend . . . 10-24
EAN-13/JAN-13 . . . 10-11
EAN-8/JAN-8 . . . 10-10
ISSN EAN . . . 10-26
reduced quiet zone . . . 10-18
supplemental AIM ID format . . . 10-17
supplemental redundancy . . . 10-16
supplementals . . . 10-13
UCC coupon extended code . . . 10-24
UPC-A . . . 10-9
UPC-A check digit . . . 10-18
UPC-A preamble . . . 10-20
UPC-E . . . 10-9

UPC-E check digit 10-19
UPC-E preamble 10-21
UPC-E1 10-10
UPC-E1 check digit 10-19
UPC-E1 preamble 10-22
USB
connection 6-2
default parameters 6-3
parameters 6-5
user preferences parameters 4-2

W

wall mounting 1-4

Tell Us What You Think...

We'd like to know what you think about this Manual. Please take a moment to fill out this questionnaire and fax this form to: (631) 627-7184, or mail to:

Zebra Technology Corporation
Lincolnshire, IL U.S.A.
Attention:Data Capture Solutions
Technical Publications Manager

Important If you need product support, please call the appropriate customer support number provided. Unfortunately, we cannot provide customer support at the fax number above.

Manual Title:_____
(please include revision level)

How familiar were you with this product before using this manual?

☐ Very familiar ☐ Slightly familiar ☐ Not at all familiar

Did this manual meet your needs? If not, please explain.

_____
_____
_____
_____

What topics need to be added to the index, if applicable?

_____
_____
_____
_____

What topics do you feel need to be better discussed? Please be specific.

_____
_____
_____
_____

What can we do to further improve our manuals?

_____
_____
_____
_____

Thank you for your input—We value your comments.

Zebra Technologies Corporation
Lincolnshire, IL U.S.A.
http://www.zebra.com

Zebra and the stylized Zebra head are trademarks of ZIH Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

©2016-2019 Symbol Technologies LLC, a subsidiary of Zebra Technologies Corporation. All rights

72E-139635-09 Revision A - March 2019